

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

ANIMAL DRUGS

BY

BERNARD E. READ

PUBLISHED BY THE
PEKING NATURAL HISTORY BULLETIN

SALES AGENT
THE FRENCH BOOKSTORE, HOTEL DE PEKIN
PEIPING, CHINA

Price \$3.00

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

ANIMAL DRUGS

By

BERNARD E. READ

Department of Pharmacology,
Peiping Union Medical College.

FROM THE

PEN TS'AO KANG MU BY LI SHIH-CHEN, A.D. 1597.

REPRINTED FROM

PEKING NATURAL HISTORY BULLETIN, VOLUME 5,
PART IV, pp. 37-80 AND VOLUME 6, PART I, pp. 1-102.

PUBLISHED BY THE

PEKING NATURAL HISTORY BULLETIN.

1931

SALES AGENT

THE FRENCH BOOKSTORE, HOTEL DE PEKIN,
PEIPING, CHINA.



Animal Collection. Department of Pharmacology,
Peiping Union Medical College.



Animal Collection. Department of Pharmacology,
Peiping Union Medical College.

CONTENTS

	Serial number
I. Domestic Animals.....	322 to 349
II. Wild Animals	350 to 387
III. Rodentia	388 to 399
IV. Monkeys and Supernatural beings.....	400 to 407
V. Man as a medicine.....	408 to 444

PREFACE

In 1920 Dr. Ralph G. Mills handed over to me specimens and notes of work done upon Chinese Materia Medica by the Research Department of the Severance Union Medical College, Seoul, which have been the basis of a prolonged investigation and an extension of my previous work upon this subject. It has been impossible at present to publish the original Severance manuscripts which were chiefly translations of the detailed prescriptions used, but the fullest recognition is due to them for the extensive work done and the large amount of comparative data made available for these studies.

In 1929 Miss Blanche Wu of the Department of Biology, Yenching University attempted to take the whole fauna used in Chinese medicine and arrange it according to modern scientific classification. There was such a wide margin of unidentified material that we have not been able to follow her classification. Such will have to remain for a number of years till more exact identifications have been made. The English and Chinese indexes compiled by Mr. Y. C. Yuan and Mr. K. L. Chang make this volume readily accessible for use without modern classification, and by retaining the original order of the materials in the Pen Ts'ao it will be easily referred to the Chinese text.

I am greatly indebted to Mr. Li Yü-t'ien for his very able assistance in the translations of descriptive notes. Where medical terminology was concerned the translations of the old Korean doctors have been adopted, except where there were obvious difference from the usage of certain terms in China.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA.

ANIMAL DRUGS.

I. THE DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Bernard E. Read,

Department of Pharmacology,

Peiping Union Medical College, Peiping.

In 1871 Porter-Smith prepared a Chinese Materia Medica, which proved of great service for many decades. In 1900 George Stuart undertook to revise the whole work in the form of three separate books upon the animal, vegetable and mineral kingdoms. Dr. Stuart lived to complete in 1911, from the Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu, his wellknown publication upon the vegetable drugs, but there remained the task of completing this work in its other fields.

This paper is the first of a series upon drugs belonging to the animal kingdom, in which a special effort has been made to find the scientific identity of the drugs, with such explanatory notes upon them as may be found both in the Pen Ts'ao and in modern literature. With the work in recent years of Sowerby, the American Museum of Natural History and others, this side of the study is much easier than heretofore, though as in dealing with vegetable drugs there is a vast gap to be covered between pharmacognosy and zoology.

With the present widespread interest in organotherapy, vitamine and hormone chemistry the attitude of scientific men toward animal materia medica has greatly changed during the last two decades. Recognizing that these old records are purely empirical in character and that their uses are based largely upon sympathetic and mimetic magic, one may still find a wealth of suggestive thought.

The chief uses of these animal drugs have been translated into English by the Research Department of the Severance Union Medical College, after considerable editing these notes have been incorporated in this report. The more extended notes upon therapeutic use have been omitted both as being too bulky, and as being material too difficult scientifically to identify or corroborate.

PEN TS'AO KANG MU. CHAPTER 50.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

There are twenty-eight headings in this group called 畜 Ch'u, which deal with the six chief domestic animals of the Chou dynasty, the horse, cow, chicken, sheep, dog and pig, and things specially prepared from them, like glue, felt, cheese etc. The *Su Wen* originally had only five in its list of domestic animals.(1)

Knowledge of the flesh of the domestic animals came through their use as food. The keepers of flocks were responsible for their names and uses in sacrifices, the hides, hair etc. were all sent to the imperial palaces. The Chow dynasty had special appointments for men who hunted wild beasts and for trappers of burrowing animals. Later various animals were presented to the court and although they were used in medicine and for food, no proper record of them was kept, and one was dependant upon the word of a few highly cultured persons. Hence in Li Shih-chen's time A. D. 1597 it was necessary to gather together all the scattered facts about animals, not only their names but the particulars concerning their properties and uses as foods, drugs and clothing. Altogether eighty-six animals of the 獸 Shou, quadruped class, were listed in 5 groups, the domesticated animals, beasts, rodents, monkeys, and supernatural beings.

These were taken from the following records:—

15	species from Shen-nung's Pen Ts'ao,	commentary written by T'ao Hung Ching, Liang dynasty.
12	„ „ Ming-yi Pieh Lu	„ ditto.
8	„ „ T'ang Pen Ts'ao	„ by Su-Kung, of the T'ang dynasty.
15	„ „ Pen Ts'ao Shih-yi	„ by Ch'en Ts'ang Ch'i, T'ang.
1	„ „ Pao Chih-lun	„ by Lei Hsiao, Sung.
1	„ „ Shu Pen Ts'ao	„ by Han Pao-sheng, Shu. (3 Kingdoms)
4	„ „ K'ou Pao Pen Ts'ao	„ by Ma Chih, Sung.
1	„ „ Chia Yu Pen Ts'ao	„ by Chang Yü Hsi, Sung.
1	„ „ T'u Ching Pen Ts'ao	„ by Su Sung, Sung.
1	„ „ Cheng Lei Pen Ts'ao	„ by T'ang Shen Wei, Sung.
1	„ „ Pen Ts'ao Yen-Yi	„ by K'ou Tsung Shih, Sung.
1	„ „ Jih Yung Pen Ts'ao	„ by Wu Jui, Yüan.
1	„ „ Shih Wu Pen Ts'ao	„ by Wang Ying, Ming.
1	„ „ Shih Ch'ien Pen Ts'ao,	„ by Ning Yuan, Ming.
23	„ new to Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu	„ by Li Shih Chen, Ming.

and numerous commentaries are cited with regard to the therapeutic uses of the different parts of these animals.

(1) This is in accord with western usage where it is customary to include all of the above with the exception of the chicken, SS. The 六畜 under heading No. 346 lists the camel in place of the chicken. From an anatomical standpoint this is more reasonable. The camel is not just a desert animal it is to be seen in the courtyards of northern villagers.

SECTION I. DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

From the **PEN TS'AO KANG MU CHAPTER 50.**

No.	Chinese	Romanization (Wade)	English or Latin name
322	豕	Shih	Pig or Hog. <i>Sus sp.</i>
323	狗	Kou	Dog. <i>Canis familiaris</i> , S.
324	羊	Yang	Goat and Sheep. <i>Caprinae</i> .
325	黃羊	Huang Yeng	Dseren. <i>Antilope gutturosa</i> , Pall.
326	牛	Niu	Cow. <i>Bos taurus</i> , L.
327	馬	Ma	Horse. <i>Equus caballus</i> , L.
328	驢	Lu	Ass. <i>Equus asinus chinensis</i> .
329	騾	Lo	Mule. <i>Equus asinus mulus</i> .
330	駝	T'o	Camel. <i>Camelus bactrianus</i> , L.
331	酪	Lao	Cream.
332	酥	Su	Butter
333	醍醐	T'i Hu	Butter-fat, 'Ghee'.
334	乳腐	Ju Fu	Cheese.
335	阿膠	A Chiao	Glue.
336	黃明膠	Huang Ming Chao	Gelatine.
337	牛黃	Niu Hung	Cow bezoar. <i>Calculi bovis</i> .
338	鮮苔	Cha Ta	Mongol rain stone. <i>Calculi animalis</i> .
339	狗寶	Kou Pao	Dog bezoar. <i>Calculi canis</i> .
340	底野迦	Ti Yeh Chia	Turfan pig's bile.
341	諸血	Chu Hsueh	The blood of the domestic animals.
342	諸朽骨	Chu Hsiu Ku	Decayed bones.
343	震肉	Chen Jou	Flesh of animals killed by thunder.
344	敗鼓皮	Pai Ku P'i	Old drum skins.
345	氈	Chan	Felt.
346	六畜毛蹄甲	Liu Ch'u Mao T'i Chia	Hair, hoof and nails of the domestic animals.
347	六畜心	Liu Ch'u Hsin	The hearts of the domestic animals.
348	諸肉有毒	Chu Jou Yu Tu	Poisonous meats.
349	解諸肉毒	Chieh Chu Jou Tu	Antidotes to poisonous meats.

322. 豕 SHIH. THE PIG.

VM: G: W: PS: SC: SS: ZNp. 1338: ADS. I. 73: PH, p. 67:

RL. British Museum (Nat. Hist.) Catalogue of Mammals, Vol. IV, p. 307: *Sus Scrofa Domesticus* ZN: Sowerby says "the same species kept all over China, a very different animal from the European domestic pig, and one whose progenitors were in no way related to the *Sus scrofa* group." Porter Smith gives *Sus indica*.

Syn. 猪 *Chu* PT; 豚 *T'un* PT; 豮 *Chia* PT; 彘 *Chih* PT; 豮 *Fen* PT; G. W.

PT. The male animal is termed 豮 *Chia* or 牙 *Ya*; the female is 彘 *Chih*, or 豮 *Pa*, or 豮 *Lou*. 豮 *Fen* is the term for the castrated animal. 豮 *Hai* is a pig with 4 white feet. 豮 *O* refers to an animal 5 feet high, the great wild boar, *Sus Gigas*, Heude. ADS. II. 129. 剛鬣 *Kang Lieh*, (stiff bristles) is a name for a wild boar. Young pigs are termed 猪 *Chu*, 豚 *T'un*, or 豮 *Hu*. At three months they are called 豮 *Chi*, at 6 months 豮 *Tsung*. A similar term 豮 *Tsung* is given for a litter. Other names given are 豮 *She*, (or *Che*), 豮 *Hsi*, and 豮 *Ch'u* for little pigs. The last of a litter of pigs is termed 么豚 *Yao T'un*, (G).

Pigs are stated to be muscular animals with fine bones, large, weighing over 100 catties (133 lbs), easy to raise and profitable.

They have been bred all over China for thousands of years, PS. Black and podgy, larger and more bristly than the English pig. There are varieties with large or short ears, thick skin, short legs, white head, the Canton pig is said to be white and exceedingly fat. The northern animal has a saddle back and low hanging belly. Successful crosses have been with Polish and other stocks to produce a larger animal and a straighter back.

PARTS USED.

Flesh, flesh from head, head, neck, fat, blood, heart, liver, spleen, lungs, pancreas, stomach, intestines, bladder, bile, gallbladder, earwax, snout, tongue, uvula, teeth, bones, testes, milk, hoof, nails, tail, bristles, feces.

豮猪肉. *Chia Chu Jou*. **PORK**, 猪肉 *Chu Jou*. PS.

Bitter, somewhat cooling, slightly poisonous.

Southern pork yields a thick deleterious gravy, northern pork thin. In medicine the pork of pure black hogs is used. White pigs, mottled, white footed sows, sick animals, pigs with yellow fat and trichinous pigs (米猪 *Mi Chu*) are not allowed to be used. 米心 *Mi Hsin* is trichinosis. It has been found to the extent of two per cent in the pigs of the Hankow market, PS. No cases have yet been reported from China of human infection with *Trichina spiralis*, says Maxwell in the Diseases of China. It will cause dysentery if eaten with coptis, platycodon, plums, or picrorhiza; with cocklebur it produces convulsions, with fresh ginger a pimply face, with buckwheat it causes falling out of the hair, rheumatism, etc.

USES. For chronic insanity, an antidote to inflammatory poisons, a kidney tonic, for dysentery, etc.

殺豬頭肉. *Chia Chu T'ou Jou.* **HOG'S HEAD.**

The flesh from the head of the hog, or from a gelded animal. Said to be poisonous, especially to sick people.

Tonic. There is also given a prescription for boils which consists of the ashed head of a fat pig.

項肉. *Hsiang Jou.* **PIG'S NECK.** Syn. 槽頭肉 *Ts'ao T'ou Jou.*

The flesh is fat and delicate.

For alcoholics, with jaundiced faces and corpulent.

脂膏. *Chih Kao.* **LARD.** PH, p 68: KMN, p 1070: Wa, p 108: FH, p 201:

豬油 *chu yu*, 輩油 *hun yu*, Wa.

Prepared in the 12th lunar month. Buried 100 days. A more excellent product is obtained by adding the whites of 14 eggs to each pint. The Taoists use it to purify the metals. When free from water it is nonrancid after 1 year. It is taken from below the neck.

Sweet, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

An antidote to cantharides, blistering flies, *Epicanta*, sulphur or poisonous livers. Laxative, diuretic, antiedemic, gets rid of boils, and promotes the growth of hair. Used in plasters. To prevent chapped hands. Given with alcohol to help expulsion of the placenta.

腦. *Nao.* **PIG'S BRAINS.** PH, p. 68.

Sweet, cooling, poisonous. Injurious to males, lessening their virility especially if taken with wine.

For chilblains, swollen abscesses, and bleeding sores of the hands and feet. Given with ginger and vinegar for a sore throat. For migraine, PH.

髓. *Sui.* **MARROW.**

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous. Taken from the spine and jaw.

For contusions. For sores on the scalp of children, and on the brow. Tonic to the bone marrow and beneficial to weak people. For swelling of the navel in children.

血. *Hsueh.* **PIG'S BLOOD:** (see 341)

Salty, bland, not poisonous. It quietens the "Yang".

An antidote to arrow poison (aconite), and all poisons. For sudden persistent hemorrhage, the bad effects of excess of sexual intercourse, and abdominal swelling.

心血. *Hsin Hsueh.* *Heart blood.*

For convulsions, dementia, smallpox, unexpelled foetus, and endocarditis.

尾血. *Wei Hsueh.* *Tail blood.*

Smallpox, in extreme collapse, and for getting serpents out of the 7 body orifices,* and apoplexy.

* Mouth, Ears, Nose, and Eyes.

心. *Hsin.* **PIG'S HEART.** PH, p. 67:

Sweet, salt; bland, nonpoisonous.

To quieten fear and anger, for a cold after childbirth, for anemia, for children who sweat from fear. For debilitating sweats, spitting of blood, post partum difficulties, and cardiac pain.

肝. *Kan.* **PIG'S LIVER.** The livers of young pigs. PH, p. 67:

Bitter, warming, nonpoisonous. Eaten with fish salad it produces boils. It is injurious if eaten with the guts of a carp. An animal frightened at the time of death is also injurious. (Anger is said to enter into it).

For infantile convulsions caused by fear. It clears the vision. Strengthens the liver. Cures ascites due to liver weakness. It is used for coldness and weakness of the viscera, chronic dysentery, sudden edema of face and body, edema in feet, edema with difficult urination, beri-beri. For red eyes and gumboils, itching of vagina, and emaciation.

Liver has been strongly recommended in modern medicine for anemia. J. Amer. Med. Assn and Br. Med. J. 1927.1930.

脾. *P'i.* **PIG'S SPLEEN.** Syn. 聯貼 *Lien T'ieh.* PH, p. 67: MW, p. 974:

Astringent, bland, nonpoisonous.

For weakness of spleen and stomach. For enlargement of the spleen and intermittent fever.

肺. *Fei.* **PIG'S LUNG.** PH, 67:

Sweet, slightly cool, nonpoisonous.

A lung tonic for weak lungs and a cough, and hematemesis associated with weak lungs.

Pig's lung is used in modern medicine for preparing the hemostatic remedy, "fibrinogen".

腎. *Shen.* **PIG'S KIDNEY.** Syn. 腰子 *Yao Tzu.* 內腎 *Nei Shen.* PH, p. 67:

Saline, cold, and nonpoisonous. Although a tonic to the kidney taken regularly it lessens the number of children and injures the kidneys; especially so in winter.

Diuretic, a bladder and kidney tonic. Warms the knees, cures deafness in the aged, For backache, spermatorrhoea, leucorrhoea, dysentery, alcoholism, weakness after childbirth, amenorrhoea, impotence, beri-beri in old men, sudden edema, for sudden and chronic coughs, chronic diarrhoea, tuberculosis, etc.

脰. *Yi.* **PIG'S PANCREAS.** Syn. 胰 *Yi,* PT. omentum. G.

Also called 腎脂 *Shen Chih* (kidney fat) because it is said to lie between the kidneys. Fatty and fleshy, but it is neither fat nor flesh, it is the source of secretion of the three digestive principles. When stout it is larger, when thin it is small. Sweet, bland, slightly poisonous. If eaten too freely it will lessen the virility of men.

For emaciation with chronic indigestion, emphysema, emollient to the 5 viscera, an antidote to blistering beetles, for dysentery, all lung diseases and coughs, a styptic, a galactagogue.

豬脛酒. *Chu Yi Chiu*. *Alcoholic extract of pig pancreas*.

For persistent diarrhoea when there is such a lack of vitality the spleen becomes cold. The tongue is ulcerated, food is tasteless or is ejected, the stomach rumbles, there is depression of spirits, dry skin, pain in knees, emaciation, dysmenorrhoea in women, no strength in the extremities etc. It is given with artemesia and cinnamon. Starchy and fatty foods must be avoided.

The Pancreas is specially recommended for the face and cracked hands and lips. In Peking people rub one pancreas with two ounces of soda and let stand overnight. Without the addition of water or heat it sets to a hard cake of soap in 24 hours and is specially used during the severe winter weather. There is confusion in the translation of the Chinese term; Giles and others call it the caul or omentum, which is also used for making soap.

肚. *Tu*. **PIG'S STOMACH**

Sweet, slightly warming, nonpoisonous.

A stomach tonic. It cures dysentery. Anthelmintic. For emaciation, stasis of the circulation, a digestive. Good for evil sores, and for many kinds of weakness. Also used for chronic watery diarrhoea, for chronic thirst night and day, beri-beri in the aged, during pregnancy to strengthen the foetus, for irritant scabies, ringworm, toothache due to caries.

The stomach is used in modern medicine for anemia.

J. Amer. Med. Assn. 1929, Sept. 7; Brit. Med. J. 1929 Feb. 23.

The dessicated preparation of the stomach tissue is termed "Ventriculin".

腸. *Ch'ang*. **PIG'S INTESTINES**. MW, 960:

Sweet, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

Antidiuretic and thirst quencher. For enteritis, flatulence, indigestion and bloody dysentery.

脬. *Fu*. **PIG'S BLADDER**. Syn. 胞 *P'ao*, 尿胞 *Sui P'ao*. G.

Sweet, saline, nonpoisonous.

For enuresis, pruritis of the scrotum, sore on the penis, painful hernia, thirst, scabs on a bald head.

The term *P'ao* also applies to the uterus.

膽. *Tan*. **PIG'S GALL**. BILE.

Wa: CMC. 1093:

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For typhoid fever, to relieve the thirst of extreme fever, anthelmintic, purgative, for eruptions on children's heads, diuretic, externally for evil sores, for conjunctivitis, to clarify the vision. Also used in the making of lacquer, Wa.

膽皮. *Tan P'i*. **PIG'S GALL BLADDER.**

The ash applied three to five times is a cure for cataract.

膚. *Fu*. **PIG'S SKIN.**

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For diarrhoea, sorethroat.

耳垢. *Erh Kou*. **EAR DIRT FROM THE PIG.**

For applying to snake bite or dog bite.

鼻唇. *Pi Ch'un*. **PIG'S SNOUT.**

Sweet, salty, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

To cure irritating frostbites, for night sweats and cataract. 目翳

舌. *She*. **PIG'S TONGUE.** FH, 198:

For the appetite and to strengthen the stomach.

脣. *Yen*. **PIG'S EPIGLOTTIS.** (The cheek, G.) Syn. 咽舌 *Yen She*, 豬氣子 *Chu Ch'i Tzu*, PT. Modern term 會厭 *Hui Yen*.

At the back of the throat, a flat red piece of flesh the size of a jujube.
For neck abscess.

齒. *Ch'ih*. **PIG'S TEETH.**

Sweet and bland. Drawn on the 5th of the 5th and ashed.

For convulsions in children, snakebite, indigestion from eating beef,
and for smallpox scars.

骨. *Ku*. **PIG'S BONES.**

Ashed jaw bone for poisoning from horse's liver, putrid meats, and bad fruits or vegetables. For smallpox. (Animal charcoal is a wellknown adsorbent for toxins).

Bone soup relieves thirst, the spine is used. The head bones ashed are given in diarrhoea. The jaw bone after heating and pulverizing is applied to venereal sores.

豚卵. *T'un Luan*. **PIG'S TESTES.**

Syn. 豚顛 *T'un Tien*, 豬石子 *Chu Shih Tzu*,

豬子 *Chu Tzu* 陰乾藏 *Yin Ch'ien Tsang* (Pieh Lu)

牡豬外腎 *Mu Chu Wai Shen*, Cf the "Nei Shen"=the kidney.

q. v.

They are called "T'un Luan=the testes of sucking pigs", because the small male pigs are usually taken as a source of supply. Hua T'o is said to have written a special treatise upon methods of castration.

Sweet, warm, nonpoisonous.

For epilepsy, painful penis, pain in lower part of the belly.

母豬乳. *Mu Chu Ju*. **SOW'S MILK.**

Sweet, saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

To prevent fits and smallpox in the newborn, to stop the craving for wine, for epilepsy in the adult.

蹄. *Ti*. **PIG'S HOOF.** Pig's peittitoes, G. From the Sow.

Sweet, saline, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

The broth is used as a universal antidote to poisons, it is a good lotion for wounds and bed sores. It is used externally for carbuncles and ulcers, it will remove necrosed tissue. Internally it is a galactagogue, and good for boils, breast abscess and swelling of hands and feet. The concentrated gluey extract is a good cosmetic for old men. For sexual impotence due to treatment with sal ammoniac.

懸蹄甲. *Hsüan T'i Chia*. **PIG'S NAILS.** (Hanging-hoof-nail)

Syn. 豬退 *Chu T'ui*. It is the nail from the back toe left hind leg, SS. Saline, bland, nonpoisonous.

For fistula and all kinds of bad ulcers, dyspnoeic snoring, phlegmatic asthma, feverish asthma, feverish colds in children, smallpox of the eyes, alopecia in children.

尾. *Wei*. **PIG'S TAIL.**

Ashed during the last month in the year.

Internally for ulcerated throat, externally applied with lard to bald heads.

毛. *Mao*. **PIG'S BRISTLES.** G.

Wa, p. 44:

Ashed and applied with hemp oil.

For burns. Internally for menorrhagia.

屎. *Shih*. **PIG'S FECES.** FH., p. 203: Syn. 豬零 *Chu Ling*.

That collected from hogs travelling eastward is considered best. Later animals travelling southward were also favored.

Cooling, nonpoisonous.

Internally for jaundice, feverish colds and as a general antidote to all poisons. Ashed and taken with water for menorrhagia, infants crying in the night. Externally as a styptic.

G. Elliot Smith discusses in "The Evolution of the Dragon", the identification in old lore of the pig with "The great mother", the cowry-shell, and the emblems of fertility. See the mythology of Egypt, Crete, Greece and India. This may account for its use in various women's diseases.

There is also included in the appendix Pig Meconium and Ham.

323. 狗 *KOU THE DOG.* **CANIS FAMILIARIS, L.**

Ss: ZN, 840, 231: PH, p. 65: Shen Nung-middle class.

Syn. 犬 *Ch'uan*; 地羊 *Ti Yang*.

The name "Kou" is an onomatopoeic word. It is also said to come from 苟且 *Kou Chieh*, indicating the illicit or thieving behaviour of the animal. Dogs are characterised by curling tails and accessory toes. The original character 犬 was said to be a pictorial representation of a dog. It is the 94th radical of the natural group of characters relating to wild beasts, (W). "Ti Yang" is a Shantung name, but they prefer to call them "龍" *Lung*=dragon, white dragons, black dragons etc. referring to dogs of the corresponding colour.

Hairy dogs are termed 龐 P'ang, long nosed animals are called 獢 Chien. A 獬 Hsieh is a short nosed dog. 猗 Yi refers to the castrated animal. 葵 Ao is a big animal said to be 4 feet high. It is said that in a litter of 9 puppies one will develop into an "Ao". 獬 Che is a name for a mad dog.

Li Shih-chen gives three uses for dogs. (1) Those used in agriculture, long mouthed and good animal killers; (2) dogs used as watch dogs which are good barkers; (3) fat dogs which make nutritious food.

Dogs are said to have a 3 months gestation period. They are classed under "Wood". In geomancy they are placed at 艮 Ken=the north east. Astrologically they are classed in the 婁 Lou. P'eng Hou 彭侯 is a mythological term for a tailless black dog said to have been formed from old wood which had grown in the shape of a dog, and said to be edible.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE DOG.** PH, p. 65.

That of yellow dogs is best. Black and white dogs are inferior.

Saline, acid, warming and nonpoisonous.

Incompatible with poke root, or apricot kernels. Eaten with garlic it is weakening. With *Trapa natans* it causes madness. Not eaten by Taoists.

Taken by pregnant women the offspring will be dumb. Taken after a fever murder will be committed. Should not be eaten in the ninth moon.

Quieting to the 5 viscera,* good for fractures, and beneficial to the respiration. Aphrodisiac. Warming to the back. Tonic to the "Wu Lao Ch'i Shang". Circulatory stimulant. Strengthening to the stomach and bowels. Venesection must not be performed during treatment with dog flesh.

*Heart, lungs, liver, stomach and kidneys.

蹄肉. *T'i Jou*. **FLESH FROM FEET OF THE DOG.** PH, p. 66 the spurs.

Bland and sourish.

Galactagogue.

血. *Hsieh*. **DOG'S BLOOD.** PH, p. 65.

That from a white dog is best.

Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

To cure madness. For difficult labour. Strengthening to the 5 viscera. For tuberculosis (wasting disease) (*Hsu Lao*), and the vomiting of blood. An antidote to arrow poison (aconite). A cure for the delirium of typhoid fever. Applied to smallpox of the eyes.

心血. *Hsin Hsieh*. **HEART BLOOD OF THE DOG.**

For heart pain, and myocardial weakness.

乳汁. *Ju Chih*. **MILK OF THE DOG.** PH, p. 65:

Must be used before the puppies eyes are opened.

Locally for chronic blindness, and for falling out of the hair.

脂并臈. *Chih Ping Yi*. **THE FAT AND PANCREAS OF THE DOG.** (Yi is sometimes translated as the omentum.)

That of a white dog is best.

For cracked hands, and face pimples.

腦. *Nao*. **DOG'S BRAIN.** PH, p. 66:

For neuralgia and nasal polypi. When bitten by a mad dog the brain of the same animal is applied to the wound. For fallen eyebrows. For paralysis, PH.

涎. *Yen*. **DOG'S SALIVA.**

To dissolve bones stuck in the throat, to expel leeches which have been accidentally swallowed. For application to prolapse of the rectum.

心. *Hsin*. **DOG'S HEART.**

To expel rage and grief. For rheumatism, epistaxis, genital sores, and hydrophobia.

腎. *Shen*. **DOG'S KIDNEY.**

Bland but slightly toxic.

For kidney weakness after childbirth. If the mother has malarial fever use pig's kidney, but if she be cold use dog's kidney.

肝. *Kan*. **DOG'S LIVER.**

Pounded to a paste with the heart and kidney it is applied to mad dog bites. For beri-beri. For colicky diarrhoea, for delerium.

膽. *Tan*. **DOG'S BILE.** PH, p. 66:

Bitter, bland, slightly toxic.

To clarify the vision, and for conjunctivitis. Anthelmintic. For nosebleed, thirst, discharging ears. A blood tonic.

牡狗陰莖. *Mu Kou Yin Ching*. **DOG'S PENIS.**

CMC, 6II. syn 狗鞭 *Kou Pien*.

It is taken at the beginning of the "dog-days" (三伏) from July 19 to 28 when the Yin Ch'i is ascendent. The tissue is dried in the shade 100 days.

Saline, bland, nonpoisonous. According to Sun Ssu Mo it is acid.

For impotency, leucorrhoea, ulcerated vagina, a tonic to the marrow and semen.

陰卵. *Yin Luan*. **DOG'S TESTES.** PH, p. 65: FH. p. 199:

Castrated at the sixtieth lunar month, and dried 100 days, PH.

The ash is used for women's diseases.

皮. *P'i*. **DOG'S SKIN.**

Torresani, p. 8:

For pain in the back apply the skin of a yellow dog to the small of the back. The ash of the skin and fur of a black dog is used for rheumatic pain.

毛. *Mao*. **DOG'S HAIR.**

For difficult labour. The neck fur is wrapped round infants to stop crying at night. The ash is used for malignant fevers and is applied externally to dog bite. Finely chopped hair with roasted glue is applied to burns.

齒. *Ch'ih*. **DOG'S TEETH.** PH, p. 66:

Bland and slightly poisonous.

For epilepsy, chills and high fever. For convulsions in dogs. Burnt and rubbed down with vinegar it is applied to ulcers on the back and from horse's saddles. Ashed with human teeth it is taken for smallpox pustules.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*, **DOG'S SKULL BONES**. Those from yellow dogs are best. PH, p. 66:
Sour sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

As a styptic for knife wounds. The ash is used for chronic dysentery. A scorched mixture with ginger and henbane is used for dysentery. The ash is aphrodisiac, a remedy for malaria, leucorrhoea, bad ulcers, infantile convulsions, fractures, nasal polypi, spermatorrhoea, and post partum hemorrhage.

骨. *Ku*. **DOG'S BONES**. Those of a white dog are best.
Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

The ash is muscle forming. It is applied to all kinds of running sores to assist granulation, and to swollen breast abscesses. The ash is given as a tonic and for infantile convulsions and for cholera. Roasted and taken with rice it is used to increase the fertility of women. It is applied with lard to ulcers on the nose.

屎. *Shih*. **DOG'S FECES**. From white dogs. FH, p. 204:
Heating and slightly poisonous.

The ash is used for boils and ulcers. It will remove the core of a boil. The ash is given for smallpox pustules, recurrent heart pain, and as a general antidote to poisons. For lung troubles, FH.

屎中粟. *Shih Chung Su*. **GRAIN IN THE FECES OF A DOG**.
Syn. 白龍沙. *Pai Lung Sha*.

Washed clean it is given for hiccough and black smallpox.

屎中骨. *Shih Chung Ku*. **BONES IN THE FECES OF A DOG**.
Given for convulsive fevers in children.

324. 羊 **YANG. SHEEP AND GOATS. CAPRINAE**

SS: ZN p. 88: KMN. p. 1129: RL, Vol I. p. 72:

Shen Nung Pen Ts'ao—middle class. Pieh Lu—for goat's milk.

Syn. 羖 *Ku*, a sheep, W. 羝 *Ti*, a ram, or buck, W. 羯 *Chieh*, a wether, a castrated ram, W.

Yang is a family name inclusive of many species. It is stated that 羊 *Yang* refers to 山羊 *Shan Yang*, the goat, ZN, p. 413, *Capra hircus*, L: RL. Vol 1. p. 156. It is clear from the Pen Ts'ao text that it also often refers to 綿羊 *Mien Yang*, the sheep, *Ovis aries*, L: RL. Vol 1. p. 75. Wilm says they are the *Ovis aries steatopyga*, Chin. Econ. Monthly, 1926. 3. 289.

The Kiangsu animal is called the 吳羊 *Wu Yang*, the head and body are of about equal width, and the wool is short. The Shensi-Shansi animal is called 夏羊 *Hsia Yang*, the head is small and the body large and the wool is long. The wool is cut every two years and made into felt, hence the name 綿羊

Mien Yang. More than 150,000 sheep and goats are imported annually into north China from Mongolia by Kueihua. Of nearly 3 million hides imported only 7 percent are goat's skins, the remainder are nearly all sheep. Chinese Economic monthly 1926, Vol. 3, p. 148.

In Yungchow, Kwangtung, there is the 乳羊 *Ju Yang* (i.e. goats) which lives on *Curculigo ensifolia* and is very fat. The flesh is said to be very tender and is very good to eat.

The period of gestation for sheep is four months. The eyes are dull, the bowels are thin and much curved. The animal is considered heating and classed under 'fire'. It dislikes the damp and favours dry places. It fattens on gelsemium.

Epimedium macrantham incites them to excessive copulation. Rhodendron is particularly toxic to sheep. Mongolians use their bones for divination (especially the scapula).* The skin is thin and is used by southerners for making books and the Kiangsu people for making lamp shades.

Subheadings.

大尾羊. *Ta Wei Yang*.

From Hami and Arabia. The tail weighs ten to twenty catties, and is carried on a trolley cart. The T'ang records it as 靈羊 *Ling Yang*.

胡羊. *Hu Yang*.

From Arabia. Over three feet high. With a big fan shaped tail, which every spring is opened and the fat removed and then closed again, the animal is said otherwise to die.

洮羊. *T'iao Yang*. Also given under Huang Yang, No. 325.

From Kansu, Lintiao. A hundred catties in weight. Kuo I-kung cites an animal from Hsi-yü as large as a donkey termed the 驢羊 *Lü Yang*.

犖羊. *Tzu Yang*.

From the northwest. The skin and hoof is used for cutting the crops.

封羊. *Feng Yang*. Humped sheep of Kansu, W. A zebu, G

From Kansu, Liangchow. Also called the 駝羊 *T'o Yang* 'the camel sheep'.

地生羊. *Ti Sheng Yang*.

From the Western borderlands. The "navel" of the new born is said to take root in the ground, which when watered and upon hearing thunder will grow. When grown the noise of a wooden clapper arouses the animal and causes the umbilicus to snap off and the animal can walk and eat grass. There are two other equally peculiar accounts of the birth of such an animal, all of which Li Shih-chen says are very strange.

* In Couling's report upon the Oracle bones from Honan he mentions the tibia of the goat &c. No. Chi. R A. S. P. 1914. 45. 65.

積羊. *Fen Yang.*

Another fabulous account of animals born out of the ground. A variety metamorphosed from trees a thousand years old are termed **青羊** Ch'ing Yang. According to Sowerby this last name refers to the manchurian Goral, *Urotragus raddeanus*, Hende, ADS, Vol. 2. p. 118.

羊肉. *Yang Jou.* **MUTTON.** KMN, p. 1077: PS, p. 160:

Bitter-sweet, very heating, nonpoisonous. It is refrigerant in Hindu medicine.

Eaten during convalescence after fevers, epidemics or malaria, it will cause a dangerous relapse of the sickness. Eaten by pregnant women the child when born will have fever. Animals with only one horn, or a black body with a white head, or the reverse, are poisonous causing carbuncles. Animals which have wool that is too downy taste musty (goaty). Cooked with apricot kernels, or with broken tiles the meat is made tender. Walnuts remove the rank taste. A bamboo rat improves the flavour. Mutton poisoning is relieved by liquorice extract. Meat cooked in copper vessels is weakening to men and causes diarrhoea to women.

Mutton is a north China dish. Porter Smith's statement that the sheep is not common in China is not true for Peking and the northern provinces, where it is extensively used, mutton being much commoner than beef. While the sheep is referred to Mongolia where it and tea are the chief articles of diet, one sees numerous flocks of sheep and goats in Hopei and Shansi and all through the north. South of the Yangtze it is said to be too dear for common use, PS. For "mutton wine" see Macgowan, No. Chi. R.A.S.P. Vol. 7, p. 237.

Strengthening to the nursing mother, and as a galactagogue. For weakness from excessive sweating, strengthening to the viscera, a vitalizer, a cardiac sedative, anticonvulsant. To cure all kinds of weakness associated with emaciation, vertigo, etc. For dysmenorrhoea, aphrodisiac, osteomyelitis, osteomalacia. For vomiting on account of spleen weakness. A stomach tonic. For diarrhoea associated with cold on the stomach, swelling of face and body. beri-beri with backache, for excessive thirst with water retention. Given to children who eat dirt.

Boiled mutton is applied to black eyes, and scald-heads.

頭蹄. *T'ou T'i.* **HEAD & HOOF OF SHEEP.** White animals preferred.

Sweet, bland and nonpoisonous. Eaten by dropsical people they never recover.

Similar to mutton in many of its uses. For dizziness in the aged, backache, osteomyelitis. People with colds should not eat it.

皮. *P'i.* **SHEEP'S SKIN.**

UMST., p. 13 and 33: Chiefly Northern. Yunnan goat skin is inferior.

Eaten for all kinds of rheumatic pain, and weakness in the feet. The wet skin is slept on to cure bruises and wounds. The dried ashed skin is given for toxemia from intestinal parasites.

脂. *Chih.* **MUTTON FAT.** Goat's fat preferred. KMN, p. 1138; PS. p. 213:

It is said to soften silver and copper.

The raw fat will stop dysentery and is used for prolapse of the rectum. For griping pains after childbirth, devil-possession, blood poisonings, rheumatic weakness from cold draughts. It protects from infection. Skin emollient. Vermicide. It cures eczema. A good vehicle for drugs to penetrate muscular areas. Applied to prolapse of the uterus. Mixed with henbane and heated the fumes are used to cure toothache due to caries. When needles or nails have been swallowed by mistake a large dose of suet is recommended. Porter Smith refers to 羊油茶 *yang yu ch'a*, made of the fat of sheep in the streets of Hunan towns, a remedy for coughs.

血. *Hsueh.* **BLOOD,** best from white sheep.

CMC, 1107:

Prolonged ingestion of sheep or pig's blood causes excessive growth of hair from the nose, 4 inches a day, as thick as string and painful.

For anemia in women. After childbirth if the circulation is low and there is threatened a complete collapse, a pint of sheep blood will restore the patient. The same treatment is given for retained placenta. To restore the patient after sudden fright. A general remedy for hemorrhage from any of the 9 body orifices. An antidote to bastard anise and gelsemium poisoning and metal poisons.

乳. *Ju.* **MILK,** from white animals preferred. KMN, p. 1101.

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

KMN, goats milk in Hindu medicine is considered sweet and cooling.

A tonic to the weak and fatigued. Quietens the heart. Cures thirst. Aphrodisiac. Tonic to the lungs and kidneys. Laxative. For infantile convulsions and thrush, angina pectoris, and for vomiting in the adult. For spider bites. Externally to whiten the complexion.

腦. *Nao.* **BRAIN.** FH, p. 201:

Poisonous.

For local application as a skin emollient, for tumorous swellings, and cuts on the feet and hands.

髓. *Sui.* **MARROW.** MW. p. 958.

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

A sexual stimulant to both men and women. An emmenagogue. A blood tonic. A respiratory sedative. Applied to conjunctivitis.

心. *Hsin.* **HEART.** From a white ram.

The heart, lungs, and kidneys are: Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous; but a heart with a hole in it will kill a man.

As a heart tonic and for melancholia.

肺. *Fei*. **LUNGS.**

If they contain flukes they should be rejected, otherwise they will cause dysentery.

As a lung tonic and for a cough. For festering wounds. For thirst and polyuria. For edema and water retention given with hyoscyamus. For nasal polypi and as a antidote to poisons.

腎. *Shen*. **KIDNEYS.** MW. p. 961:

Aphrodisiac, kidney and stomach tonic, for deafness, enuresis, weakness and night sweats. The soup made with kidneys and mutton fat is good for chronic dysentery, obstruction of the bowels, thirst and beri-beri.

羊石子. *Yang Shih Tzu*. **SHEEP'S TESTES.** FH. p. 199: MW. p. 983:

Syn. 外腎 *Wai Shen*.

For spermatorrhoea.

肝. *Kan*. **SHEEP'S LIVER.** (Black ram). FH, 198:

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous. Eaten with pork, plums or peas it is injurious to the heart. With fresh peppers it is injurious to the viscera especially in small children. With bitter bamboo shoots it is injurious to children and is liable in pregnant women to injure the foetus.

A tonic to the liver. and for weakening fevers. Internally and externally for conjunctivitis. Dimness of vision, shortsightedness, intraocular lesions, gingival ulcers, fatigue and emaciation, chronic dysentery. epilepsy, and locally for vaginitis.

膽. *Tan*. **SHEEP'S BILE.**

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For failing eyesight, inflamed eyes, lachrymation, and various eye troubles. For failure of vision after disease. For constipation, acne, acne after childbirth, ulcerated mouth in children (thrush?)

胃. *Wei*. **SHEEP'S STOMACH.** Tripe.

Syn. 羊臑脰 *Yang P'i Ch'ih* PT. 臑析 *P'i Hsi*, G. 羊肚 *Yang Tu*. Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

For cold sweats, enuresis, emaciation, stomach weakness and thirst, snake bite of the hand with swelling, scrofula.

脬. *P'ao*. **SHEEP'S BLADDER.**

For involuntary urination.

膈. *Yi*. **SHEEP'S PANCREAS.**

For chronic coughs, leucorrhoea, smallpox.

舌. *She*. **SHEEP'S TONGUE.**

A digestive tonic.

- 麩.** *Yen.* **EPIGLOTTIS OF THE SHEEP.** (Cheek, G.)
 Syn. 會咽 *Hui Yen*, PT.
 Sweet, slightly warming, nonpoisonous.
 For goitre (瘰) and swellings of the neck.
 Given with 3 kinds of seaweed.
- 睛.** *Ching.* **SHEEP'S IRIS.** MW, 961:
 For conjunctivitis and filmy growth over eye (cataract?). 白珠 *Pai Chu*.
 The lens of the eye is also used.
- 筋.** *Chin.* **SHEEP'S TENDONS.**
 CMC, 1106 Goat's Sinews.
 The meat juice is dropped into the eye to remove dust.
- 殺羊角.** *Ku Yang Chiao.* **RAM'S HORN.** (The Black Ram).
 Wa, p. 429: Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.
 To improve the sight. For convulsions, fever chills after childbirth, hemoptosis and dyspnoea, rheumatic pains, headache.
 For scabies, and diarrhoea. Beri-beri, alopecia, and falling out of hair, infantile convulsions, scarlet fever, painful contusions.
- 齒.** *Ch'ih.* **SHEEP'S TEETH.**
 For epilepsy in children and fevers.
- 頭骨.** *T'ou Ku.* **SHEEP'S CRANIUM.** That of a ram is best.
 Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.
 For vertigo, emaciation and infantile convulsions.
- 脊骨.** *Chi Ku.* **SHEEP'S VERTEBRAE.**
 Sweet, heating, nonpoisonous.
 For weak stomach in old age, senile weakness, kidney weakness with backache or deafness, gonorrhoea, and running sores.
- 尾骨.** *Wei Ku.* **SHEEP'S TAIL BONE.**
 A kidney tonic. To improve the eyesight. For deafness due to weakness. As an abdominal tonic.
- 脛骨.** *Hsing Ku.* **SHEEP'S TIBIA.**
 Syn. 髀骨 *T'ung Ku*; 頗兒 *P'o Erh*; (胡人名) 髀骨 *Hsing Ku*, PT.
 Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. Calcined and powdered.
 As a tooth powder to strengthen the teeth, for toothache, dysmenorrhoea, for gonorrhoea, weakness and emaciation, arthritis, for impotence due to weakness of kidney and spleen, for strengthening the back and legs, for toothache due to indigestion, for treatment when copper coins have been taken in mistake and for bones stuck in the gullet.
- 毛.** *Mao.* **SHEEP'S WOOL.** Wa. This may refer to goat hair, 山羊毛.
 Boiled in vinegar and applied to the feet, for spasms (convulsions or cramps, G)
 For chemical analysis see W. G. Sewell, J. W. C. Border Research Soc. 1926. 3. 34-39.

鬚. Hsi. GOAT'S WHISKERS.

The ash is applied with oil for ulcerated mouth in children, and sore lips.

溺. Ni. SHEEP'S URINE. KMN. p. 1141.

Salted beans mashed and steeped in sheep's urine are used for swollen hands and feet after typhoid fever.

屎. Shih. SHEEP'S FECES.

DH. 240, 羊月砂 *yang yueh sha*; further reference to Debeaux's list which mentions Houang tsee chee, the excrement of the mountain goat.

Bitter, bland and nonpoisonous.

For exhausting dysentery, heartburn, vomiting, flatulence, convulsions and dribbling in children. The ash is used for discharging ears, and applied to bamboo splinters or the barbs of arrows stuck in the skin. A watery extract of the ash applied to the hair no more than 10 times will produce growth of the hair which will turn black. With goose fat it is applied to the scalp. A decoction is good for urine and fecal retention; when burnt the vapours are inhaled through the nose for nausea and colic, the vapours are also used for infected sores, and hemorrhoids.

羊膈子. Yang Kai Tzu. SHEEP'S GUD.

It is the grass bolus from the sheep's stomach.

To quieten the stomach, it is given with jujube.

The Customs list also gives 羊鞭 *Yang Pien*, **Sheep's Penis**, CMC. 1496.

Syn. 羊腎 *Yang Shen*.

325. 黃羊. HUANG YANG. THE DSEREN, OR GOITERED ANTELOPE.

ANTILOPE GUTTUROSA, Pall. VM.

VM, 42: ADS, Vol. 2, p. 123: RL. Catalogue of Mammals Vol. 3, p. 35: *Gazella (Procarpa) gutturosa*: UMST, 1.

Syn. 藩羊 *Fan Yang*. 繭耳羊 *Chien Erh Yang*, PT. 大頸羚羊 *Ta Ching Ling Yang*, UMST.

From Sinkiang, and Kueilin in Kwangsi. Torresani in writing about the goitred or Mongolian antelope says: "In the summer the pelage is of a rich orange faun colour, with white underparts and croup, while in winter it is of a lighter colour, without the orange tint, and becomes thick and heavy". This accounts for the Chinese name "*Huang Yang*," the yellow sheep.

One of the earliest reports upon this animal was by Gray, in the Zoological Society Proceedings, 1867, pp. 244-6.

Cf. *Budorcas Tibetana*, Lydekker, the Szechuan *Takin* from Moupin, golden yellow in summer.

The fat is yellow. The ears very small. Yellow bellied. In the rutting season the males develop a goitre-like swelling in the throat. Li Shih-chen says there are 4 kinds all small and small ribbed. One kind has horns like a ram, it likes to lie down in sandy places, it travels well, but is solitary. There is a black tailed variety, & another kind which travels in groups of tens, born in the pastures.

The Kansu animal is much larger with a tail like a deer, it is called the 洮羊 T'iao Yang. The short tailed gazelles are classed under the Procarpa, Lydekker, Vol. III, p. 29.

The Kueilin animal has dark wool, with a black line down the back and white spots like a deer. Their skins are all useful for making sleeping covers.

肉. *Jou*. **ANTILOPE FLESH.**

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. The brain must not be eaten. General tonic for weakness.

髓. *Sui*. **ANTILOPE'S MARROW.**

Used similar to sheep's marrow.

326. 牛 NIU. THE COW. BOS TAURUS, L.

PS: SS: 2 p. 223: Lydekker Vol I. p. 12: KMN, p. 1079:

Syst. Natur. 1786, Vol. 1, p. 98.

Syn. 黃牛 *Huang Niu*.

The character represents a head and two horns with a tail behind, G. The 93rd radical relating to bovine animals. The Book of Rites calls the ox 太牢 T'ai Lao, it was offered to Confucius. The sheep was termed 少牢 Shao Lao, the stables for them being smaller.

The cow is classed under "earth". Geomantic class 坤土 K'un T'u. Character slow and peaceful and obedient. The hoof is cloven because it is inferior, as contrasted with the horse which is superior and has a hoof mark quite round. A sick cow stands up because it is overcome with "Yang", a horse when sick lies down being overcome with "Yin". The cow in sitting down lowers the front legs first. In rising it raises the hind legs first. The horse has the opposite behaviour. Three other animals are given:—

犛牛. *Ch'in Niu*.

Small with black, red and white mottled marks on the back, PT. Old name for an Ox, G.

水牛. *Shui Niu*. **The Water Buffalo. BOS BUBALIS, L.** Linn. Syst. Natur. 1766, Vol. 1, p. 99. Lydekker, Vol. 1, p. 41.

Large and dark grey in colour. Big bellied, pointed head like a pig. The horns are shaped like a spear with which it can fight tigers. The white species come from Yu-lin and are called 州留牛 Chou Liu Niu.

犏牛. *Chi Niu*. This may be the **BOS BANTENG**. RL. Vol. 1, p. 21. Syn. 果下牛 Kuo Hsia Niu.

See Lydekker, Wild Oxen, Sheep and Goats 1898, p. 41, London.

From south of Canton. Exceedingly small. The Erh Ya name is 犏牛 *Pa Niu*. Wang Hui Pien gives the name 犏牛 *Wan Niu*.

General description:—Cows only have teeth in the lower jaw, from which the age can be reckoned, at three years there are 2 teeth, at 4 years there are 4, 5 years 6 teeth, and later the vertebrae are an index.

Cows use their noses only for hearing, the ear is deaf. The pupil of the eye is vertical only. The largest cattle farms are in Mongolia. China imports through Paotouchen 9000 head annually, and there are other large imports through Kweihua and Kalgan. Chin. Econ, Monthly 1926. 3. p. 201.

黃牛肉. *Huang Niu Jou.* **BEEF.** PS: KMN, 1075:

The best is from the Ch'in Niu, that from dark grey animals is good, and buffalo meat may be eaten.

Cows that have eaten snakes have white glossy hair. The meat of such animals is poisonous. Human milk is the best antidote. If cows low in the night and have a bad odor or if they die of sickness the meat should not be eaten, for it is liable to produce boils and sudden death. The meat of animals with scabies will cause irritation of the skin.

Should not be eaten with leeks it will cause fever. It is injurious to the teeth if eaten with raw ginger. A beef diet will quieten a bad tempered horse.

The Jih-hua records state that beef is stronger than buffalo meat. It is liable to synergise the action of drugs and cause sickness. The old records considered it bad to kill large numbers of a useful domestic animal, and the beef of black cows was considered deleterious. (Plenty of good beef is sold in Hankow, PS. The cities of the north also sell great quantities.)

Black cows with white heads are poisonous. Northern farmers used to fatten their lean cows by passing snakes through the nose, such animals had only one liver lobe and were very poisonous, causing fatal dysentery.

Sweet, warming and nonpoisonous.

Stomach tonic, strengthening to the back and feet, benefitting the respiration, etc.

Beef extract is included in the Pen T'sao appendix.

水牛肉. *Shui Niu Jou.* **BUFFALO MEAT.** PS:

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

For thirst, benefits the respiration, stomachic, good general tonic for weakness, strengthens muscle and bone, removes dropsy with retention of urine, a dehydrotic.

頭蹄. *T'ou T'i.* **HEAD AND HOOF OF BUFFALO.**

Cooling.

For fevers, and for dropsy with retention of urine.

鼻. *Pi.* **BUFFALO'S NOSE.**

To cure thirst, boiled with fossil *spirifer*. As a good galactagogue it should be made into soup and given not longer than 2 days. For Bell's palsy, applied to the paralysed side of the mouth and eye.

皮. *P'i.* **BUFFALO SKIN,** or Cow hide.

DH, 417: FH, 134:

For dropsical swellings given with bean relish. It makes good glue.

DH. In ribbon-like shavings, 3/8 of an inch broad, whitish, opaque, hard, tough.

乳. *Ju.* **COW'S MILK.** PS. KMN, p. 1101:

Sweet, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

Milk from black animals is better than that from white ones. In Hindu medicine the milk of white cows is considered heavy of digestion and it deranges the 'Kapha', but the milk of black cows is very wholesome, KMN. Buffalo milk is richer in cream, (see analyses Lingnan Agric, Review. 1922. 1. 1-30 butter fat up to 12.6 percent; also Philip. J. Science 1919. 15. 91.)

It should be boiled twice and then cooled before taking. It is incompatible with acids. Taken with acids it is constipating and causes cold diseases. Eaten with raw fish it produces asthma.

For thirst and as a general tonic. Antifebrile, nutritive to brain and lungs, softening to the skin. Decocted with garlic it will expel cold and cure indigestion. It is good for fever patients and old people. With ginger and onion it will stop infant's vomiting. Demulcent to the large bowel curing dysentery and biliousness. For inflammation of the heart and spleen with thirst and polyuria. For beri-beri.

血. *Hsieh.* **OX BLOOD.**

For hemorrhage of the bowel, bloody dysenteries, antivulnerant. For fractures that threaten to be fatal and to remove leeches from the stomach.

脂. *Chih.* **BEEF SUET.** PS.

Purified from brown animals. Slightly poisonous. Eaten too freely it causes chronic sores.

For scabies, baldness, acne, and all kinds of sores. Internally for constant thirst. Externally for axillary bromidrosis. With salted beans for jaundice.

For making candles and ointments, PS. under the name 牛油 *Niu Yu.*

髓. *Sui.* **OX MARROW.** MW. p. 958.

From black and yellow oxen, and buffaloes, purified.

For developing bone marrow. It cures diarrhoea and thirst. It quietens the viscera and metabolism. A tonic to the circulation of the stomach. It improves the respiration, is a tonic to the kidneys, and makes the skin and face smooth. It is given for fractures and applied to painful wounds. For cracked hands. Aphrodisiac.

腦. *Nao.* **BRAIN OF BUFFALO OR BROWN COW** (Yellow). MW, p. 959

Warming and slightly poisonous.

For dizziness and thirst. For acne and chapped skin. For hemoptysis, threatened madness and constipation.

心. *Hsin.* **HEART FROM THE YELLOW COW.**

As a heart tonic and to improve the memory.

脾. *P'i.* **SPLEEN.**

A spleen tonic. For hemorrhoids, with glauber's salt for stoppage of the bowels.

肺. *Fei.* **LUNG OF THE BUFFALO.**

A lung tonic.

肝. *Kan.* **OX LIVER.** MW, p. 962:

A liver tonic clearing the vision. Cooked with vinegar for fevers and dysentery. Applied to the vagina for pruritis.

腎. *Shen.* **KIDNEY.** MW, p. 961:

A kidney tonic. Aphrodisiac. Antirheumatic.

胃. *Wei.* **STOMACH OF THE YELLOW COW OR BUFFALO.**

Sometimes the stomach and bowels of a black cow are given with dog blood and dog meat.

For thirst, and dizziness, A tonic to the viscera, benefiting the stomach. Strengthening the vitality.

臍. *P'i.* **COW TRIPE.**

Syn. 百葉 *Po Yeh.*

For dysentery. An antidote to alcohol and poisonous drugs.

膽. *Tan.* **OX GALL.**

R. B. 30, Tls. 16 a catty: Wa. 482: KMN. p. 1090: BP: PS, p. 171.

Best taken from yellow or black animals in the 12th lunar month.

Marketed in cubical pieces about 1½ inches long. When old it splinters with a knife. Dark brown or almost black. Wa.

Bitter, exceedingly cooling, nonpoisonous. In pills.

To remove heat and thirst. For dysentery and improving the vision. For jaundice black beans fermented in bile 100 days are given one each night to quieten the liver and clear the vision. With powdered arum for convulsions. Applied to piles and to impotency.

胞衣. *Pao Yi.* **COW PLACENTA.**

Ashed and applied to ulcer on the leg.

喉. *Ho.* **LARYNX OF THE WHITE BUFFALO.**

To cure emesis, and indigestion.

鬐. *Yen.* **EPIGLOTTIS OF THE BUFFALO.**

For numbness and swelling of throat glands.

齒. *Ch'ih.* **TEETH.**

Roasted and ashed for epilepsy in children.

牛角膠. *Niu Chiieh Sai.* **HORN MARROW.**

Syn. 角胎 *Chiieh T'ai.* Burnt to an ash.

For all kinds of uterine discharges, hemorrhagic dysenteries and bleeding piles. Applied to bee stings.

角. *Chüeh*. **BUFFALO HORN**. Ashed.

CMC. No. 901 & 1321: Wa, 427:

Apophyses of the frontal bone, covered by corium, and by a sheath of true horny material. Tough, elastic, and flexible. Large and somewhat flattish, marked with rings indicating roughly the age of the animal, Wa. Exported mostly from Hankow, Mengtsz, Chungking, Tengyueh, Nanning, Canton and Shanghai. Wa.

For headache, epidemic fevers, and toxic fevers. For paralysed swollen throat of a deadly character (diphtheria?). For infants who cannot swallow milk readily, apply the ash to the nipple of the mother. For gonorrhoea. For baldness.

骨. *Ku*. **OX BONE**. Ashed.

CMC. No. 905.

To cure emesis, uterine discharges, watery and bloody diarrhoeas, noxious fevers. Applied with lard to ulcers in the nose.

蹄甲. *T'i Chia*. **COW' HOOF** from dark animals, ashed.

Uses. For leucorrhoea and uterine discharges, and convulsions. Applied with oil to leg ulcers and applied in powder form to the navel to stop crying of infants at night. Applied to sores on penis, to broken bones and painful wounds. Applied to "cow hide ringworm", (anthrax?).

陰莖. *Yin Ching*. **OX PENIS** of yellow or black cows, or buffalo.

CMC, 908. syn. 牛鞭 *niu pien*.

For uterine discharges from sterile women.

牯牛卵囊. *Ku Niu Luan Nang*. **BULL'S SCROTUM**.

Taken internally with fennel for rupture or stricture.

毛. *Mao*. **COW HAIR**. Ashed.

Navel hair: for children who never learn to walk.

Ear, tail and pubic hair. for anuria. (Strangury G.)

Ear hair: for gonorrhoea.

Tail hair: for noxious fevers.

Pubic hair: for stone in the bladder in children.

口涎. *K'ou Yen*. **COW'S SALIVA**. MW, p. 963:

Washed with water from the mouth of an old animal, or stimulated to flow by the use of a little salt, or collected from the dripping mouth of a tired farm animal etc.

To stop vomiting. For infants with cholera, and dribbling at the mouth. For hiccough, swollen throat and tetany. Applied to injuries of the eye and to pimples on the face and body.

鼻津. *Pi Ching*. **NASAL SECRETION OF THE COW**. MW, 963: on mucin.

For ulcers in the nose and watery eczema of children.

耳垢. *Erh Kou.* **EAR DIRT** from a black cow.

A little salt put into the ear will assist its removal.

Applied to poisonous snake bites, boils, nasal ulcers, nonpurulent carbuncles, epistaxis.

溺. *Ni* **URINE**, from black oxen, or yellow gelded buffaloes. KMN, p. 1141.

As a diuretic for water retention with swelling of abdomen. For beri-beri. Dyspnoea with anuria, beri-beri with dropsy, dropsy with anuria, chronic distention with gas and chronic indigestion. For cholera.

屎. *Shih.* **DUNG** from black or yellow bulls. KMN, p. 1079:

Syn. 牛洞 *Niu Tung.*

Bitter, cooling and nonpoisonous.

For dropsy. Dried and roasted it is applied to running sores and evil boils. Ashed it is applied to chronically inflamed sores. Applied to broken carbuncles and smallpox sores. It obliterates scars.

The fluid expressed from the feces was recommend for thirst, jaundice, beri-beri, cholera, anuria. Also for dropsy, salt being forbidden in the diet. Ashed, applied with alcohol to painful testes. Given for pain during pregnancy due to the kidneys or toxemia.

The wet feces are applied to abdomen if there be a dead unexpelled foetus. A lump of feces put under the bedmat without the mother knowing, stops an infant crying in the night. It is applied thick for baldness in children, and for dogbite. The ash is applied with calomel and hemp oil to ulcers on children's heads, and for broken sores. It is applied with egg white to open sores. The very old dried feces of a yellow or black cow is applied to purulent carbuncles, etc.

Considered of much benefit in Hindu medicine, KMN.

黃犢子臍屎. *Huang Tu Tzu Ch'i Shih.* **MECONIUM** of a yellow calf, which has not eaten. Dried and powdered.

For hemorrhages from any of the 9 body orifices or from the spaces between the fingers and toes, caused by anger. For hemoptysis, and cholera in extremis.

屎中大豆. *Shih Chung Ta Tou.* **Beans from cows feces**, washed and sunned.

For difficult labour, for convulsions in children, also given when the teeth fall out and do not grow again properly.

聖糞. *Sheng Chi.* **GRASS BOLUS** of undigested material from the stomach of the cow.

It is like green algae.

Used as an antidote to beef poisoning.

齶草. *Ch'ih Ts'ao*. **GUD** of the cow.

Syn. 牛嘔草 *Niu Chüan Ts'ao*; 回嚙 *Hui Chueh*, PT.

The expressed juice is used to stop retching. For indigestion and flatulence. For cholera with sickness and diarrhoea. For dribbling and trismus in infants.

鼻拳. *Pi Chuan*. **THE WOODEN NOSE RING OF A COW.**

Convulsions in children. Boiled in water and given, or the ash is mixed with wine for thirst, and ulcers on children's upper lip.

327. 馬. MA. THE HORSE. EQUUS CABALLUS, L.

SS: ZN p. 1151: RL. Vol. 5. p. 6: G: W:

The character is said to include a picture of the head, mane, tail, and feet.

Terms for the Sire: 隲 *Chih* 兒 *Erh*; the Dam: 駘 *She*, 課 *K'o*, 草 *Ts'ao*; the gelded animal 騙 *P'ien*;

1 yr. old 驥 *Chu*, 2 yr. 駒 *Chü*, 3 yr. 駉 *Fei*, 4 yr. 駘 *T'ao* other names and classes are given in the *Erh Ya* and the *Shuo Wen*.

The Sanskrit (梵) name is 阿濕婆 *Ah Shih P'o*.

The white horse is preferred in medicine. The S. E. horses are weak.

A valiant animal. The best animals are from Ta-T'ung Fu and the Northwest, and 雲中 = N. Shansi. About 10,000 are annually imported into China from Mongolia through Kueihua, and many more through Kalgan.

The gestation period of the horse is 12 months.* The age is reckoned from the teeth. It is classed under fire 火 *Huo*. Geomantic class is 乾 *Ch'ien* and 金 *Chin*, the northwest position.

Its eyesight while young is very acute. When old it becomes shortsighted. Raised on 杜衡 *Tu Heng* (asarum) it travels fast; a rice diet makes it slow. Rat dung makes its belly swell, chicken excreta causes 骨眼 *Ku Yen* (cataract?). If the teeth be rubbed with dead silkworms (僵蚕 *Chiang ts'an*) and plums it loses its appetite. This can be cured with a diet of mulberry leaves. Rat or wolf skin hung in the stable keeps it from food. If it sees Hai Ma Ku it stands still. Pig fodder, wall plaster from the stable, with horse sweat from the stable door, will hasten delivery of the foal. A monkey in the stable will keep away sickness.

肉. *jou*. **HORSE FLESH**, best from a pure white stallion PH Bitter, cooling and poisonous.

It must be very thoroughly boiled after being washed free from blood, otherwise it produces boils. It is fatal to eat the flesh of a horse which has black under the saddle or animals that have died (from sickness). People with scabies or dysentery should not eat it. If pregnant women eat it the foetus

* The period of gestation in the horse is only eleven months, in the others (asses and zebras) more than twelve. F. E. Beddard, *Mammalia*, London, 1909.

will die. Children of a nursing mother will develop purulent ulcers. There is ninety percent mortality after ingesting it with brown rice and burweed. Meat from a horse with horns, a horse without callosities on the legs, a white horse with dark feet, or from a white horse with a black head, will cause madness. Eaten with ginger it causes temper. With pork it brings on cholera. The depressant effect of poisoning from horse meat is relieved by clear wine but intensified by cloudy wine. Turnip juice or apricot kernels both act as antidotes to horse flesh poisoning.

Removes the inflammation from wounds. It builds muscle and bone and strengthens the loins. A vitalizer lightening the body removing hunger and for paralyzing fevers. The boiled extract is applied to baldness and head ulcers.

鬃膏 *Ch'i Kao.* **OIL FROM THE MANE OF A HORSE.** White horses preferred. Slightly poisonous.

To help the growth of whiskers, to cure chapped hands and feet, and for Bell's paralysis.

乳 *Ju.* **MARE'S MILK.** KMN, p 1105:

In Han times it was fermented to make Koumiss. 馬乳酒 *ma ju chiu*, PS. Nonpoisonous, but eaten with white bait it causes asthma.

To stop thirst and fever. Made into junket it is warming. It is a meat digestive. Used by the Moguls, KMN.

心 *Hsin.* **THE HEART OF A HORSE.** White horse preferred. PH.

For forgetfulness. Not to be eaten by a dysenteric person, PH.

肺 *Fei.* **THE LUNGS OF A HORSE.** PH, p. 64.

For impotency, and to treat chills and fevers.

肝 *Kan.* **THE LIVER OF A HORSE.** PH, p. 63.

It is very poisonous.

For amenorrhoea.

腎 *Shen.* **THE KIDNEY OF THE HORSE.**

This contains bezoar stones used like those from the gallbladder of a cow, or dog, termed 馬墨 *Ma Mo*.

白馬陰莖 *Pai Ma Yin Ching.* **THE PENIS OF A WHITE HORSE.**

Dried in the shade 100 days and cut into seven pieces with a copper knife. Smear with goats blood, steam and dry in the sun, rub with a cloth to remove the blood, grind up and take.

For convulsions in children. Aphrodisiac. For inflamed wounds. For impotency. The fresh testes are used in Annam for this purpose, PH.

駒胞衣 *Chii Pao Yi.* **HORSE PLACENTA.**

Charred and powdered and taken with musk for amenorrhoea.

眼 *Yen.* **THE EYE OF A HORSE.** Taken from a freshly killed white horse. PH. p. 64.

For convulsions in children, fullness of stomach, and malaria. For fear, PH.

夜眼. *Yeh Yen.* (night eyes) **CALLOSITIES ON THE KNEES OF A HORSE.**

These enable the animal to see and travel at night.

Used with aconite for toothache due to decayed teeth. To combat the deadly effects of the humors of a corpse.

牙齒. *Ya Ch'ih.* **HORSE'S TEETH.** The lower ones of a white horse, ashed. PH. p. 64.

Sweet, bland, slightly poisonous.

For removing the core of a carbuncle. For unbroken carbuncles.

Taken with white of egg for intestinal tumors. For decayed teeth.

骨. *Ku* **BONES OF A HORSE.** Ashed. PH. p. 63, The femur and humerus.

Poisonous.

Applied with vinegar to head and body ulcers. To stop malaria. Applied with oil to ear sores, head sores, and genital sores in children. Apply to the nipple to stop babies crying at night.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku.* **HEAD BONES OF THE HORSE.** PH. p. 64.

Sweet, slightly cooling, and a little poisonous.

To cure weakness of gall with insomnia, and for a fever causing too much sleep. Applied to tibial ulcers. For toothache.

脛骨. *Ching Ku.* **TIBIA OF THE HORSE.** Calcined.

Nonpoisonous.

Used in place of coptis or scutellaria as a tonic.

懸蹄. *Hsüan T'i.* **THE HOOF OF A HORSE,** from red or white animals. PH. p. 64: FH. p. 202:

Hsüan refers to the hanging part, which may mean heel or accessory toes. The text refers simply to the hoof.

For convulsions, epistaxis, white horse hoof for leucorrhoea. Hoof of a red horse for menorrhagia. For epilepsy, toothache. Worn as a talisman. against plague, men use the left hoof, women the right.

皮. *P'i* **HORSE HIDE** of a red horse.

To quicken parturition. The ash is applied with lard to eczema on children's heads.

鬃毛. *Ch'i Mao.* **HORSE'S MANE.**

Syn. 鬣 *Lieh.*

Poisonous.

For convulsions in children and uterine discharges, white horses for white and red for red. The ash is applied as a styptic and to bad sores.

尾. *Wei.* **HORSES' TAIL.** PH. p. 64:

For menorrhagia, and for excessively shy and intractable children.

腦. Nao. BRAIN OF THE HORSE.

Poisonous, causing madness.

Taken in warm wine for alcoholism.

血. Hsieh. BLOOD.

Very poisonous. If fresh horse blood enter the skin, it will swell up in one or two days and is fatal. Men after flaying a horse and injuring the hands have been known to die the same night.

汗. Han. SWEAT OF THE HORSE.

Very poisonous, should not be allowed to enter wounds.

For blackened tattoo marks. For alcoholism.

白馬溺. Pai Ma Ni. URINE OF THE WHITE HORSE. PH, 64: KMN, p. 1141: FH, p. 205:

Acrid, slightly cooling, poisonous.

For intolerable thirst, anthelmintic, for indigestion. For toothache wash out the mouth with horse's urine three to five times. Applied to swollen breasts, or red scabs on the body of a child. Given for asthma (癢) resulting from swallowing hair, and for cardiac pain.

白馬通. Pai Ma T'ung. DUNG OF THE WHITE HORSE. PH, p. 64: FH, p. 203:

Cowdung is called 洞 *Tung*, pig's feces 零 *Ling*.

Ashed and given for all kinds of hemorrhage. For epistaxis the nose is plugged with fresh material wrapped in cloth. For bloody dysenteries, persistent vomiting, menorrhagia, and postpartem weakness. For epidemic diseases. Applied to open wounds. The watery extract is used for chilblains, colic, horse bite. For loss of the sense of smell.

屎中粟. Shih Chung Su. GRAIN IN HORSE FECES.

For feverish cold and lack of appetite in children. For painful ribs in children.

馬絆繩. Ma Pen Sheng. Hobble rope.

The ash is applied to nose sores.

東行馬蹄下土. Tung Hsing Ma T'i Hsia T'u. DIRT FROM THE HOOF OF A HORSE TRAVELLING EASTWARD.

With the mud from a 三家 well applied to the navel region, after lying down the individual cannot rise.

328. 驢. Lu. THE ASS. EQUUS ASINUS CHINENSIS, ZN*.

T'ang Pen Ts'ao: Z N p. 2602: PH, p. 64: G: W:

The donkey's strength is in the belly 臚, the horse's strength is in the shoulders.

* Three are three Asiatic species of wild ass, F. E. Beddard, q. v. The domestic ass of Asia is referred to *E. asinus*, EL. Vol. 5. p. 37.

Long jawed, broad browed, sword shaped ears, long tail, and brays in the night at the 5 watches. A good beast of burden. They are white, black and dark grey. Black donkeys are used in medicine. The wild ass occurs in Kirin, is tabby colored, mane and tail long, big boned. It is as effective as the black domestic ass. (The wild ass is also common in Mongolia.) In western China there is a 山驢 Shan Lü with horns like an antelope, q. v. In the Isles of the Eastern Sea there are 海驢 Hai Lü, which can enter the water without getting the skin wet. The skin is useful for clothing, being a good indicator of damp weather, the hair rising when damp winds blow.

肉 *Jou*. **DONKEY MEAT.**

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Eaten with salvia or with water-chestnut it is fatally poisonous. Eaten by pregnant women they will have difficult labour.

It relieves heart discomfort, and cures all forms of "wind" diseases, madness, extreme depression and it quietens the mind. It is a tonic to the circulation and respiration.

頭肉. *T'ou Jou*. **HEAD FLESH OF THE DONKEY.**

The water extract, 2 to 3 pints, is an infallible cure for a chronic intolerable thirst. Fermented with liquor, it can expel the "great winds". When other drugs have failed it is a good remedy to try for jaundice. For vertigo.

脂. *Chih*. **DONKEY FAT.** PH, p. 65:

Applied to bad ulcers, scabies, ringworm, and swellings. For insanity with dumbness and lack of recognition of people three pints are given with alcohol. With black plums for long standing malaria. Mixed with chilies it is plugged with cotton in the ears of the chronically deaf to effect a cure. It is given with wine for a racking cough. It is applied with salt for cold swellings on all parts of the body. For tetany, PH.

髓. *Sui*. **DONKEY MARROW**, the white portion from the shin bone of one of the front legs.

For chronic deafness it is applied to the ear.

血. *Hsieh*. **BLOOD OF THE ASS.** FH, p. 200:

The warm blood shaken with hemp oil, and the froth removed, upon boiling turns white.

Saline, cool, nonpoisonous.

Beneficial to the intestines. Laxative. It expels fever. For rheumatism, FH.

乳. *Ju*. **ASSES' MILK.** KMN, p. 1106:

To relieve the thirst of the great fevers. For convulsive fevers in children and dysentery. For convulsions in infants, and colds, 天弔風 refers to the cold caused by the drooping of one end of the Milky Way. For acute heart pain with fever in the kidneys and navel. Applied to spider bites, and dropped into the ear to remove insects. With coptis it is applied to the eye for conjunctivitis.

陰莖. *Yin Ching*. **DONKEY'S PENIS.**

CMC, 784. syn 驢鞭 *liu pien*.

A muscle tonic. It improves the "Yin".

駒衣. *Chii Yi*. **PLACENTA**, ashed.

Given with wine for alcoholism.

皮. *P'i*. **DONKEY'S SKIN.**

CMC, 733.

Boiled to a glue, 阿膠 see No. 335, given for arthritis and rheumatism, hematemesis, menorrhagia, flatulence, dysentery, intermittent fever, and anthrax 牛皮風癬.

毛. *Mao*. **HAIR OF THE ASS.**

For all types of inflammation in the bones. Roast 1 catty of hair to a brown colour and steep in 10 pints of wine three days. Before breakfast sip until intoxicated, lie down in a warm place and sweat it out. Repeat the next day and take old brown rice. Hair from between the shoulders is used for the treatment of colds in young babies.

骨. *Ku*. **BONE OF AN ASS.**

The soup is most effective in treating chronic thirst of several years standing, and for pain in the joints.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **HEAD BONES OF THE ASS.**

Ashed and applied with oil to help the bones of a child's skull to grow together.

懸蹄. *Hsüan T'i*. **HOOF OF THE ASS.** Ashed. FH, p. 202:

Applied to carbuncles, and with oil to sores on children's heads. Applied with sugar of lead and calomel to inflamed testes. For perforation of the intestine due to excessive wine drinking. For malignant fever given with arsenic, sulphur and mercury salts. For retention of urine, FH

溺. *Ni* **URINE OF THE ASS.** PH, p. 64:

Acrid, cooling, slightly poisonous.

For spider bites and dog bites. For indigestion and vomiting. For toothache. For pruritis. For deafness, mixed with the sediment of human urine and dropped in the ear.

屎. *Shih*. **DUNG OF THE ASS.** PH, p. 65:

Applied hot to swellings, and carbuncles. For menorrhagia, acute heart pain, toothache, dropsy, chronic nausea. Ashed, the powder is a good styptic for nose-bleed, mixed with oil it is applied to wet eczema, and foul sores.

耳垢. *Erh Kou*. **EAR DIRT FROM THE ASS.**

Applied to scorpion's stings.

尾軸垢. *Wei Chou Kou*. **DIRT FROM THE PROXIMAL END OF A DONKEY'S TAIL.**

Cooked with flour and given for acute and chronic fevers.

溺下泥. Ni Hsia Ni. URINARY SEDIMENTS.

Applied to spider-bites.

驢槽. Lii T'sao. THE DONKEY'S MANGER.

To stop a baby's ceaseless crying, it should be secretly carried to the stable by 3 different women, where they must lie down for a while.

329. 騾. LO. THE MULE. EQUUS ASINUS MULUS. L.

ZN, p. 2452, p. 2608. G. W.

Syw. 騾 *Lo*.

Larger than a donkey, stronger than a horse. Its strength is in the back, making it a good beast of burden. The pelvic bones are said to be locked preventing coitus and so it never has young. There are said to be five kinds from (1) a jack on a mare. = 騾 *Lo*. (2) A stallion covering a jenny = 騾驢 *Chieh T'i*. (3) A jack covering a cow = 騾驢 *T'o Mo*. (4) A bull covering a jenny. = 騾驢 *Tse Chung*. (5) A bull on a mare = 騾驢 *Chü Hsi*.

肉. Jou. FLESH OF THE MULE.

Acrid, bitter, warming, slightly poisonous. Debilitating. Eaten by pregnant women they have difficult labour. Rarely used, never mentioned in earlier therapeutics.

蹄. T'i. HOOF OF THE MULE.

Ashed and given with musk and wine for difficult labour.

屎. Shih. FECES OF THE MULE.

As a hot poultice to contused wounds, bruises and swellings, which show infection.

330 駝. T'O THE BACTRIAN CAMEL. CAMELUS BACHTRIANUS, L.

ZN, 2903. G. W. ES. PS.

Syn. 橐駝 *T'o T'o*; 駱駝 *Lo T'o*.

The name indicates a beast of burden, a carrier. There are wild and domestic animals. Habitat: Mongolia and the west of China. (Tens of thousands exist around Peiping for transporting coal, lime, etc.)

The fat in the two humps is used in medicine and is best if collected from wild animals. (F.E. Beddard doubts the existence of wild animals, q.v.).

It is shaped like a horse, head like a sheep, long neck, drooping ears, the foot is divided into three, it has 2 humps like a saddle. They are colored yellow, purple, brown, and dark grey. It makes a characteristic noise, it chews the cud, it stands the cold well, but dislikes the heat. Hence in summer all its wool comes out, and the wool is used for carpets etc. The dung when burnt gives a smoke which rises as straight as wolf dung smoke. It can carry several 1,000 catties. It can travel 200 to 300 li a day. It can sense water and wind. It can divine under-ground water. It can sense the hot wind

storms of the deserts and when it buries its mouth and nose in the sand people are warned of an approaching storm.*

A 明駝 *Ming T'o* is a very hardy animal; when it lies down, the belly does not touch the ground and the feet are free. The Yu Tien camel of Sinkiang is called 風脚駝 *Feng Chiao T'o* because it goes like the wind and covers a 1,000 li a day (333 miles). Turkey camels have one hump, named the *C. dromodarius*. 一封駝 *Yi Feng T'o*, also called a 封牛, *Feng Niu*. (This latter name usually applies to the zebu.)

There is also the 兩脚駝 *Liang Chiao T'o* which undoubtedly refers to the ostrich, the 駝鳥 *T'o Niao*.

駝脂. *T'o Chih*. **CAMEL FAT.** from the hump.

Syn. 峰子油 *Feng Tzu Yu*.

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

Applied to gout, evil sores, necrotic tissue, inflamed and swollen joints, and gangrene. Cooked with rice and given for piles. With wine for general debility. For paralysis of the extremities, from the wild animal and mixed with butter.

肉. *Jou*. **CAMEL FLESH.**

Nonpoisonous.

Strengthening to the bones and ligaments, softening to the muscle.

乳. *Ju*. **CAMELS' MILK.** KMN, p. 1106:

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

A vitalizing tonic, strengthening the bones and ligaments and removing hunger.

黃. *Huang*. **CAMEL BEZOAR.**

Bitter, mild, slightly poisonous. Used to adulterate cow-bezoar, it is like it in shape but it has no smell, and is not so effective.

For convulsive fevers.

毛. *Mao*. **CAMEL'S WOOL.** Wa, p. 44.

The average weight of a fleece is 5 catties, Wa.

For chronic uterine discharges. The chin hair is ashed and taken with wine for hemorrhoids. Mixed with lead oxide it is applied to sores on the penis.

屎. *Shih*. **CAMEL DUNG.**

Dried and powdered, applied to the nose for epistaxis. When burnt the smoke will kill mosquitoes and lice.

* The habits and character of the dromedary camel are well described by A.G. Leonard, the Camel, London, 1894.

331 酪. *LAO or LO. CREAM.* PS. (Curd?)

T'ang Pen Ts'ao: PS: KMN:

Syn. 潼 *T'ung*, PT, 乳皮 *Ju P'i*, CP: Hindu name 'malai'.

Made from cow, sheep, buffalo, camel or horse milk. That from the buffalo is thickest and best. That from the cow and horse is cooling. Donkey's milk is so cooling it is unsuitable for making cream.

There is a dry and a wet kind. In medicine, cream from cow's milk is considered best and is easily obtained. The milk is heated in a caldron and with constant stirring it is boiled 10 times, each time a little cold milk is added. After pouring out in a jar and cooling, the upper layer is removed to make 酥 *Su*. The jars are covered with paper and the curd gradually forms.

To make the dried preparation 乾酪 *Kan lo*, place the milk in the sun and repeatedly remove the layer that comes to the surface. Then put in a pot and heat. Pour out into a bowl and allow it to clot and then separate. (These methods agree with Wilm's description of present day mongol sour milk production, Chin. Econ. Monthly 1926. 3. 287. This term is given in some dictionaries for 'cream cheese').

In present day Peiping *lao* refers to *JUNKET*, it made like *toufu* by the addition of a small amount of plaster of Paris. There is great confusion in use of the terms referring to milk preparations. This is due to great difference in the methods of making, an undoubted provincial use of the various names and a confusion with Mongolian methods and names. Williams states that 'Lao' refers to cream, dried milk, or racky from mare's milk. This certainly does not agree with the Pen Ts'ao descriptions of their methods of preparation.

Uses. For thirst, weakening inflammation in the chest, toxic fevers, boils and face pimples. Increases blood and semen, improves the skin colour, a tonic for general debility, laxative to the bowels. Applied to skin rashes. Poured into the ear to remove millipedes.

332. 酥. *Su. BUTTER.* (*Dried Cream*)

PS. W. SC, Cream: KMN, p. 1100: Wa, p. 89:

Syn. 馬思哥油 *Ma Szu Ko Yu*, PT. 乳油 *Ju Yu*, CP: Hindu name "muska": 黄油 *Huang Yu*, Wa.

Made from the milk of cow, buffalo or sheep. It is skimmed from the surface of the heated milk and the fat is later separated by further careful heating. Said to come from Ichow (old Szechuan and Kueichow). The Mongols make a curd like butter called "Su". W. It seems probable that the mongolian name 馬思哥油 *Ma Szu Ko Yu*, is related to Kumiss, the fermented whey of the Siberian plains, which is also known as 酥酪, W. The Sanscrit name for whey is 'mastu'. The milk of the Yak was considered excellent for making "Su".

The cows milk preparation is said to be cooling and must not be used for colds. That from the sheep is heating and must not be used in fever cases.

In some places mutton suet is used as an adulterant. The heating and separating of its oil appears to refer to butterfat 酥油. Volkonsky discusses the "milk products of mongolia" in the *Chin. Econ. Monthly* 1926. 3. p. 540. *Su* would appear to be *dried cream*, and *lao* is *sour milk*.

A tonic to the 5 viscera and intestines. For ulcers on the mouth. Beneficial to the heart and lungs, curing coughs, hematemesis, thirst, Given with warm alcohol for debility, to improve the circulation in the skin and muscles, and for all kinds of ulcers. It softens the hair. *Butter* made from *Buffalo milk* is used for rheumatism, and fevers. It is laxative and cures indigestion. Added to ointments for applying to swellings, sprained ankles, and traumatic wounds. Applied to bee stings, insect bites, and to remove dirt from the eyes.

333. 醍醐. T'i Hu. BUTTER-FAT, similar to Indian *Ghee*.

W: PS: SC, Whey: KMN, p. 1110: Wa, p. 104, 清乳油 *Ch'ing Ju Yu*:
The Sanscrit name for ghee is "ghrita",

W. The oily scum that floats on boiling butter. This is of Buddhist origin. The Buddhist books say that "*Lao*" comes from milk, "*Su*" comes from "*Lao*", and "*T'i Hu*" comes from "*Su*". It is yellowish white. Used for making good cakes. 100 catties of "*Su*" when heated are said to yield only 3 to 4 percent of "*T'i Hu*". The weather is said not to effect its consistency. It is limpid and sweats through most vessels, but it does not penetrate the shell of a hen's egg nor through a bottle gourd.

Given with wine for rheumatism and all lung diseases. Applied for bleeding at the back of nose, and to clear the nasal passages in infants. Given with warm wine for urticaria, and all kinds of skin irritation. It is good for headache, clarifies the vision, and is soothing. Is a marrow tonic, increases the semen, and taken regularly it prolongs life.

334. 乳腐. Ju Fu. CHEESE.

PS: W: SC, cottage cheese or clabbered milk: SK, p. 100:

Syn. 牛奶酥 *Niu Nai Su*, W: 乳餅 *Ju Ping*, PT:

牛奶餅 *Niu Nai Ping*, PS: 奶豆腐 *Nai Tou Fu*, SK.

Best made from cow's milk. The milk is boiled 5 times, water being added to keep it down. Vinegar is added to make it curdle like bean curd. It is strained through cloth, and squeezed between stones to form a cake. Another method is to take cream, heat to boiling, and add a tenth of its volume of soybean sauce, it then spontaneously curdles. It is placed in cloth, the liquid squeezed out, and stored in the cloth wrapping. Cheese straws are made by sunning the milk till it curdles, then heating it to boiling, a little acid soy is added, and the cake separated. It is placed in a copper and heated (to expel the excess water), then rolled out like thin pastry and rolled around bamboo sticks.

It contains water 8.44%, proteins 50.53% and fats 24.45%, SK.

It is sweet, slightly cooling and nonpoisonous. That from buffalo milk is said to be cooling, from cows milk it is warming. It is emollient to the viscera, laxative and diuretic. It benefits the 12 parts of the circulation and is a certain cure for dysentery.

335. 阿膠 *Ah Chiao* GLUE. from the ass and cow.

PS. W. RB, 2, 30; DH. 419; PH, 60; SK, p. 100:

Syn. 傅致膠 *Fu Chih Chiao*, PT: 驢皮膠 *Lü P'i Chiao*, RB.

The name Ah Chiao is from the Ah Ching an old Shantung city well the water of which was used for making Chiao. From the text of the Pen T'sao we see no reason for Porter Smith's assumption that Ah Chiao was simply a concentrated extract of this well water, although it is clear that this well was credited with unusual value in the making of glue. In Annam they also use a special well water, DH: and the Sino-Annamites make it from buffalo skin, PH. *Pieh Lu..* Made at Tung P'ing Fu, Tung Ah Hsien from cow hide. *Li Shih-chen* says it is of three grades. The best is made from buffalo and donkey skin. That from pigs, horses, mules, and camels' skin is not so good. An inferior kind is made from old hides and leather boots. Tao Hung-ching recognizes its mixed origin and mentioned 3 classes of glue. (1) Clear thin pieces used by artists, (2) clear thick pieces (2 inches by one and a third inches rectangular cakes PS.) used in medicine and called 覆盆膠 *Fu P'en Chiao*, (3) muddy black material used for sticking objects together. It is made in the winter months. Braun cites an imitation asses glue 假阿膠, dark material valued at Tls. 40 per picul. It is exported today from Shantung, Hupeh, Szechuan.

The raw hide is macerated in water 4 to 5 days, (bitter saline water is best) and then washed and scrubbed clean. It is then boiled in water for a long time until the skin is in shreds. It is strained and the watery extract boiled down to a glue and poured into moulds. The bottom layers are called 全膠 *Fen Chiao*. In medicine only material as bright and transparent as amber should be used. Darker kinds if genuine will be as bright as jet and as smooth as varnish. In summer it does not soften or get damp. It should not have the smell of hide.

Ox glue is considered best for treating debilitating diseases, asses glue is best for treating humoral complaints.

Deer horn was used by some people to clarify the glue, and deer horn glue has had its distinctive names, but Li Shih-chen does not recognize its special character.

According to the prescription it is roasted in various ways, plain, with flour, powdered clam shells, or with plant ashes. Or it may be made up into an extract dissolved in water, or in light wine.

It is said to enter the 手太陰 *Shou T'ai Yin* and 足少陰 *Tsu Shao Yin* parts of the circulation. The yam is used as a therapeutic adjuvant. It is incompatible with rhubarb.

Regarded as a most valuable remedy for respiratory and circulatory troubles. It is used for paralysis, asthma, summer dysenteries, chronic cough, weak lungs with hemoptosis, epistaxis, dysmenorrhoea, amenorrhoea, hemoglobinuria during pregnancy, bloody dysentery during pregnancy, to quieten the foetus, and for weakness after pregnancy.

336. 黃明膠. *Huang Ming Chiao*. GELATINE, from cowhide.

PS, incorrectly given as 魚膠 *Yu Chiao*: Wa, 415:

Syn. 牛皮膠 *Niu P'i Chiao*, 水膠 *Shui Chiao*.

海犀膏 *Hai Hsi Kao*, PT:

This is apparently a variety of 阿膠 which can be made with any kind of well water.

It is used internally for its styptic action in the various kinds of hemorrhages mentioned under "Ah Chiao". Also for hemorrhage from a broken lung, spermatorrhoea, beri-beri, rheumatics in the legs, callosities on the bottom of the feet, all kinds of poisonous swellings and foul wounds.

The comparatively large number of cowhides upon the market obviously make this the most likely source of raw material.

337. 牛黃. *Niu Huang*. COW BEZOAR:

PS: W: PH, 99: Shen-Nung; CMC, 904: RB, 30: KMN, p. 1077:

Syn. 丑寶 *Ch'ou Pao*, PT. Sanskrit name 瞿盧折娜 *Ch'ü Lu Che No*.

Pieh Lu—From Shansi and Shensi. Braun also mention India, Tibet, Kansu, Yunnan, Szechuan, Shantung and Kwangtung. Taken from the gall bladder, dried in the shade 100 days away from the light of the sun or the moon. An animal suffering from gallstones will constantly low and the eye is blood red, the body is luminous at night; the animal is afraid of people and likes to stand and reflect at the waters edge. If a basin of water be placed before the animal, a frightening noise will cause it to vomit the bezoar into the basin. These are called 生黃 *Sheng Huang* and are the most costly.

The camel bezoar is said to be used to adulterate the cow bezoar. A similar concretion in the horse is called 馬墨 *Ma Mo*. The genuine throws off only a small scale when a hot needle is thrust into it, and in hot water it remains unchanged, PS. They are oval in shape, of yellowish colour, with concentric structure like human gallstones. They are not very heavy which fact distinguishes them from urinary and other calculi from various animals. A donkey bezoar offered to the writer for \$93.00 by a druggist at Ch'i Chow, weighed 31 ounces and was only about the size of a large cricket ball. Genuine cow bezoar from the same merchant was \$48 an ounce. A second quality is cited in the Customs list 土牛黃 *t'u niu huang*, CMC.

According to Hirth and Pelliot the name bezoar means literally "antidote", from the Persian "pazahr", rendered in Chinese 婆娑 *P'o So*. This is disputed by Laufer, *Sino Iranica*, p. 525.

Jünges and Klages found in oriental bezoar stones a substance called *Lithofellic acid* $C_{20}H_{36}O_4$, related to cholic acid, insoluble in water, easily soluble in alcohol, but only slightly soluble in ether. See Hammarsten's textbook of Physiological Chemistry, and older literature.

Three or four kinds are described to differentiate between their size and texture. The 散黃 *San Huang* is composed of small granules like hemp seed. There is a very brittle kind which is said when first found to be as soft as the yolk of a hen's egg, placed in water it hardens and is called 心黃 *Hsin Huang* or 漫黃 *Man Huang*. The round stones taken from the slain or dead animal is called 圓黃 *Yuan Huang*. The scaly character of the stone also gives it the name 塔子黃 *T'a Tzu Huang*, "pagoda bezoar". There does not seem to be any sense to the old ideas that these stones were found in the heart and horns of the animals.

The cow bezoar is most frequently a lime-pigment stone and not the so-called cholesterin-stones usually found in the human. Generally heavier than water, iron and copper seem to be regular constituents. They consist chiefly of calcium bilirubin with small amounts of the cholic acids. Manganese and zinc have been found in a few cases. (Hammarsten.)

Much might be written about the great value placed upon this remedy by the ancients. Bauhinus in 1613 wrote a long treatise upon the subject comparing the stones from the orient and the occident. It is used extensively in Hindu medicine, KMN.

Bitter, mild and slightly poisonous in character.

Ginseng was considered its adjuvant. Peony and sweet flag increased its action in treating ear and eye diseases. Incompatible with gentian, rehmannia, dragon's bone etc. It is rendered inert by dried varnish or achryanthes.

Uses. For convulsions, epilepsy, delerium, and insanity especially in children. For tetany and lockjaw. It is abortifacient. Taken constantly it produce a good memory, lightens the body and prolongs life. For loss of speech and general weakness. For infants with bellyache and crying at night. For black smallpox. In Indo-china it is used for leprosy and liver complaints.

Imported bezoars come from Japan, India, and South America. The Japanese product is obtained from goats. The South American product is yellow in colour and comparatively free from impurities. That from India is packed in tins of 2 ounces each and sold at about Tls. 400 a catty for the whole kind and Tls. 300 for the broken, see Chinese Economic Journal 1929, Vol. 4, pp. 33-44.

338. 鮓苔. *Cha Ta* **MONGOL RAIN STONES. BEZOAR STONES.**

Li Shih-chen: PS: W: Wa, 326: FH, 136:

Biliary and other calculi, W.

Syn. 百草丹 *Po Ts'ao Tan*, PT: 糞石 *Fen Shih*, Wa.

Laufer, Sino-Iranica, p. 527, says it is from the Turkish Mongol word, "Yada" or Jada." He cites extensive literature and concludes that the Turks may have obtained their bezoars from China.

As large as hens eggs or filbert nuts. White in color. When broken they show a layered texture. People in the western borderlands use them with incantations to bring rain. If the spell is not known it is equally effective if put in a basin with water and rolled to and fro. The best are from cows and horses (but the horse has no gall-bladder SS). They are also obtained from pigs, known as pig stone, Wa. p. 326.

The stones from each animal has its own specific name, 狗寶 *Kou Pao*, 牛黃 *Niu Huang*, 馬墨 *Ma Mo*, 鹿玉 *Lu Yü*, 犀通天 *Hsi T'ung T'ien*. Though these are all discussed together under "Kou Pao", they appear to refer more particularly to biliary calculi, and no clear distinction is made between them and stones from the urinary bladder. "Oriental bezoar" is from the ibex, and like many other bezoars, is formed of bile and resin. That from the Persian wild goat is often counterfeited by means of pipeclay and ox gall, Wa.

Used for convulsions and septic gatherings.

339. 狗寶. *Kou Pao*. DOG BEZOAR.

PS. W. PH. Li Shih-chen.

Calculs vesicaux des Chiens, PH.

Obtained from mangy dogs. Greyish white stones, with a layered texture. Rare. There is the mistaken idea that these stones are formed in the heart. Several fabulous accounts of such are given telling how priest's bodies after cremation had left in the ashes hearts like stone on which were found carvings or pictures of Buddha or Kuan Yin. There is further discussion and confusion of ideas associated with meteorites, fossilization of the marrow of dragon's bones, various insects and crustaceans, fossilized wood (pine), and meteorites falling from the eyes of dying tigers, all of which Li Shih-chen recognizes are stonelike in character, but he says that they cannot be classed together. He emphasizes the pathological character of all calculi whether human or animal.

Sweet saline, mild, slightly poisonous.

Used for hiccough and nausea, regurgitation and inability to swallow food, carbuncles and ulcers, and swollen throat. For vomiting and colic, PH.

340. 底野迦. *Ti Yeh Chia*. TURFAN PIG'S BILE.

T'ang Pen Ts'ao.

From the wild western tribes. Made from pig's bile and looks like old moldy pills, reddish black in colour. The Turkistan people put great value upon it.

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Used for visceral stasis, for toxemia in any sickness, and for excessive shyness and intractability.

341. 諸血. *Chu Hsueh*. BLOOD OF DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

From the horse, ox, sheep, fowl, dog and pig.

Li Shih-chen has continued this heading from the Pen Ts'ao Shih Yi, but he says people should refer to the respective animals for their uses, because

animals differ according to their habits, water or land habitat, regional distribution, hot and cold blooded, poisonous and nonpoisonous characters.

A tonic and a blood former. Given when there is a drying up of the blood and the face is colourless and the skin puckers up. For fevers and thirst. A general antidote to poisons, mushroom poisoning and metal poisoning.

**342. 諸朽骨. *Chu Hsiu Ku.* DECAYED BONES,
Of any Origin, so long as they are not Poisonous.**

Taken for osteomyelitis. Chronic watery diarrhoea, toothache from cold in the face. Rubbed down with spittle it is applied to blackened and swollen wounds after beatings. Taken from an eastern wall and rubbed down with vinegar and applied, it will completely remove scars.

**343. 震肉. *Chen Jou.* THE MEAT OF ANIMALS KILLED BY
THUNDER.**

From the cow, horse, sheep, chicken, dog or pig.

Ordinarily people are warned not to eat such meat, otherwise it will cause the "big wind" diseases, madness, leprosy, edema etc.

It is given cooked to children frightened by the dark, and for adults who, as a result of fright, are supersensitive.

344. 敗鼓皮. *Pai Ku P'i.* OLD DRUM-SKINS.

Pieh Lu.

That from the cow is best, but horse and donkey hides are also used. Cows urine, horsedung and old skins are three useless sort of things which old doctors used but today the skins are used chiefly for making glue.

Ashed and taken for the "Ku" poisoning. Ashed and applied to the penis for difficult urination, and to ulcers on the ear.

345. 氈. *Chan.* FELT.

W: Wa, p. 26: Shih Yi:

Made from the fur of domestic animals in the northwest, both white and black 烏氈 Wu Chan. There are dyed varieties, dark green, black, yellow, and red. Various names are used for things made from felt,

毯 T'an = rugs. These have a cross weave of cotton material.

褐 He = coarse woollen clothing.

縹 Chi = a coarse camel carpet, from the western tartars, G.

氈氈 P'u Lu = open wove woollen cloth from Tibet, G.

氈氈 ch'ü shu = a felt mat which the Emperor sat on to worship Shangti, W. Used in Peiping for covering the stage in theatres.

Ordinary felt is not made from yarn, but is simply steamed, tangled pounded, and pressed. The quality of the finished felt depends largely upon the number of scales on the surface of the fibres used as raw material, Wa. The Mongols make the best felt. They simply take old material as a basis and roll

on the new wool by tying a wooden roller behind a horse and riding for miles over the Mongolian plains, which pounds and presses it into the toughest kind of tangled material.

Nonpoisonous. The ashed material is given for hemorrhages after childbirth, painful contusions, ulcers on the gingiva and nose, nightmare, uterine discharges, edemas and rheumatism.

346. 六畜毛蹄甲. *Liu Ch'u Mao T'i Chia.* THE HAIR, HOOF AND NAILS OF THE DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Shen-nung.

This refers to material from the cow, sheep, pig, horse, chicken, and camel. Donkeys and mules may also be included. The hair of the camel is considered most effective. They are discussed individually under their respective animal headings.

Saline, bland, but poisonous.

The ashed and powdered material is used for epilepsy and insanity, and Ku worm toxemia.

347. 六畜心. *Liu Ch'u Hsin.* THE HEARTS OF DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

From the cow, horse, pig, chicken, sheep and dog, Dried and powdered.

The ancients according to the principle of sympathetic magic used the hearts of these animals to treat heart disease in man, but Li Shih-chen points out that in the slaughtering of animals they become frightened, fear enters the heart and anger goes to the liver, hence later doctrines arose stating that the hearts of animals were injurious to the human heart, and liver was bad to the liver. They are discussed under the headings of the respective animals. In general they are used to improve the memory, strengthen the heart and remove pain, for fright, and for heart pain due to worms.

348. 諸肉有毒. *Chu Jou Yu Tu.* POISONOUS MEATS.

Cow's liver with only one lobe.

A black cow with a white head.

Cows and horses which have had boils and died.

One horned sheep.

Black sheep with white heads.

Pigs and sheep with perforated hearts or livers.

A horse with horns.

White sheep with black heads.

The black flesh under a horse's saddle.

Horse liver.

White horses with black heads.

Animals which have died with the head to the north.

Horses without callosities on the legs.

White horses with dark colored legs.

Dogs with extra hanging toes.
 Animals that die from plague and scabies.
 White chested deer.
 Deer with spots like a leopard.
 Animals shaped like a dragon.
 Animals with forked tails.
 Animals with red feet.
 Meats containing cysts (trichinosed).
 Double headed monsters.
 Birds with dark livers.
 Animals killed with poison arrows.
 Dried meat, which has gone damp in a leaky room.
 Dried meat from a rice jar.
 Meat from which the blood has not been drained.
 Sacrificial meat which shows movement.
 Uncooked stale meat.
 Viscera which move on being placed near grass.
 Cooked meat which on sunning does not become dry.
 Fresh meat which does not dry.
 Pickled and salted meat that has not changed colour.
 Incompletely cooked meats.
 Cooked meat which does not dry.
 Meats which dragged along the ground do not have dirt stick to them.
 Meats which float in water.
 Vessels of meat broth which take the breath away, (stink).
 Meats which dogs refuse to eat.
 Meat fried in cream.

The above things if eaten may cause death, or illness, or toxic swellings or ulcers.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING POISONOUS MEATS.

*Heart tissue weakens the heart.

Brains weaken the virility and cause the semen to flow.

The spleen should never be eaten.

*Liver weakens the liver.

Blood weakens the blood and virility.

Dried meat, which stinks, eaten in summer causes impotence and produces edema,

Stinking fish and putrified meat are inedible.

Animal fats used as lamp oils weaken the eyes.

Flesh of the animal associated with a person's astrological constellation will disquiet the spirit.

Liver should not be eaten in spring.

Heart should not be eaten in summer.

Lungs are forbidden in autumn.

Kidneys are not to be taken in winter. The spleen is bad at all times.

*This refers to animals which have been killed. In killing the heart is filled with fear and the liver is filled with anger.

349. 解諸肉毒. *Chieh Chu Jou Tu.* **ANTIDOTES TO POISONOUS MEATS.**

For poisonous flesh from domestic animals.

Dried feces of the domestic animals,
 or *Phellodendron Amurense*,
 or Ashes,
 or Ashed red mung bean,
 or mud from an east wall,
 or white *Dolichos lablab* beans.

The above are all taken with plenty of water.

Human milk.

A drachm of dandruff taken in water will raise a man from the dead.

The juice from salted beans.

Horse meat poisoning.

The juice from the roots of reeds.

Apricot kernels—well chewed.

Liquorice juice.

Good wine.

Horse liver poisoning.

Pig's bones ashed.

Feces of the male rat.

Salted beans.

Dog's feces ashed.

Dandruff, in water.

Meat from horses or cows suffering from boils.

Eupatorium japonicum, root crushed in water.

Ashed pig's teeth, with water.

Fresh flagroot crushed in alcohol.

Chrysanthemum root crushed in water.

Liquorice extract in sufficient quantity to produce sweating.

Beef poisoning.

Soup of pig's trotters.

Liquorice soup.

Ashed pig's teeth with water.

Single-lobed-ox-liver poisoning.

Human milk.

Poisonous dog-flesh.

Apricot kernels, contused, with water.

Mutton poisoning.

Liquorice, watery extract of.

Pork poisoning.

Crushed apricot kernel juice.

The juice squeezed out of pig's feces.

The juice from leeks.
Sodium sulphate.
Ashed pig's teeth in water.
Rhubarb broth.

Meat poisoned by arrows.

Soy bean juice.
Salt broth.

Meat from injured animals.

The bones of the respective animal ashed and given with water.
The juice from fresh leeks.
Coriander, boiled juice of.

Indigestible meat.

Take more of the juice of the same meat and it will digest.
The brain of the respective animal also aids digestion.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- ADS. =Arthur de C Sowerby, *The Naturalist in Manchuria*. 1922, Vols. 1—V, and other publications.
- CMC. =China Maritime Customs, *List of Chinese Medicines*, Shanghai, 1889.
- CP. =English Chinese Dictionary, Commercial Press, Shanghai, W. W. Yen, 1908.
- DH. =David Hooper, *Chinese drugs in Malaya*, *The Gardeners' Bulletin*, Strait Settlements, 1929, VI, pp. 1—163.
- FH. =Franz Hübötter, *Beiträge zur Kenntnis der chinesischen sowie der tibetisch-mongolischen Pharmacologie*, Berlin, 1914.
- KMN. =K. M. Nardkarni, *Indian Materia Medica*, Bombay, 1927, pp. 1417.
- MW. =W. H. Martindale, *Extra Pharmacopoeia*, London, 19th edition, 1928.
- PH. =*Materia Medica et Pharmacopée Sino-Annamites*, E. Perrot and P. Hurrier,
- PS. =F. Porter Smith, *Chinese Materia Medica*, Shanghai, 1871.
- PT. =本草綱目 Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu by Li Shih-chen.
- RB. =R. Braun, *List of Medicines exported from the Yangtse ports*, Chinese Maritime Customs, Shanghai, 1909.
- RL. =R. Lydekker, *Catalogue of Ungulate Mammals*, British Museum, 1913, Vols. 5.
- SC. =Severance Collection Notes.
- SK. =S. Kubota and T. Okanishi, *Folia Pharmacorum Sinicorum*, Chinese Materia Medica, Mukden, 1931.
- SS. =Septemus Sisson, *The Anatomy of the Domestic Animals*, London, 1917.
- UMST. =U. M. S. Torresani, *Furs and Skins*, China Maritime Customs, Shanghai, 1928.
- VM. =O. F. von Mollendorff, *N. C. Roy. As. Soc.*, 1877, **11**, 31—112.
- Wa. =Watson, E., *Articles of Chinese Commerce*, Shanghai, 1923, *The Maritime Customs 11*, Special Series No. 38.
- ZN. =動物學大辭典, 商務印書館, 上海, 第三版, March 1924.

Dogs with extra hanging toes.
 Animals that die from plague and scabies.
 White chested deer.
 Deer with spots like a leopard.
 Animals shaped like a dragon.
 Animals with forked tails.
 Animals with red feet.
 Meats containing cysts (trichinosed).
 Double headed monsters.
 Birds with dark livers.
 Animals killed with poison arrows.
 Dried meat, which has gone damp in a leaky room.
 Dried meat from a rice jar.
 Meat from which the blood has not been drained.
 Sacrificial meat which shows movement.
 Uncooked stale meat.
 Viscera which move on being placed near grass.
 Cooked meat which on sunning does not become dry.
 Fresh meat which does not dry.
 Pickled and salted meat that has not changed colour.
 Incompletely cooked meats.
 Cooked meat which does not dry.
 Meats which dragged along the ground do not have dirt stick to them.
 Meats which float in water.
 Vessels of meat broth which take the breath away, (stink).
 Meats which dogs refuse to eat.
 Meat fried in cream.

The above things if eaten may cause death, or illness, or toxic swellings or ulcers.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING POISONOUS MEATS.

- *Heart tissue weakens the heart.
- Brains weaken the virility and cause the semen to flow.
- The spleen should never be eaten.
- *Liver weakens the liver.
- Blood weakens the blood and virility.
- Dried meat, which stinks, eaten in summer causes impotence and produces edema,
- Stinking fish and putrified meat are inedible.
- Animal fats used as lamp oils weaken the eyes.
- Flesh of the animal associated with a person's astrological constellation will disquiet the spirit.
- Liver should not be eaten in spring.
- Heart should not be eaten in summer.
- Lungs are forbidden in autumn.
- Kidneys are not to be taken in winter. The spleen is bad at all times.

*This refers to animals which have been killed. In killing the heart is filled with fear and the liver is filled with anger.

349. 解諸肉毒. *Chieh Chu Jou Tu.* **ANTIDOTES TO POISONOUS MEATS.**

For poisonous flesh from domestic animals.

Dried feces of the domestic animals,
 or *Phellodendron Amurense*,
 or Ashes,
 or Ashed red mung bean,
 or mud from an east wall,
 or white *Dolichos lablab* beans.

The above are all taken with plenty of water.

Human milk.

A drachm of dandruff taken in water will raise a man from the dead.

The juice from salted beans.

Horse meat poisoning.

The juice from the roots of reeds.

Apricot kernels—well chewed.

Liquorice juice.

Good wine.

Horse liver poisoning.

Pig's bones ashed.

Feces of the male rat.

Salted beans.

Dog's feces ashed.

Dandruff, in water.

Meat from horses or cows suffering from boils.

Eupatorium japonicum, root crushed in water.

Ashed pig's teeth, with water.

Fresh flagroot crushed in alcohol.

Chrysanthemum root crushed in water.

Liquorice extract in sufficient quantity to produce sweating.

Beef poisoning.

Soup of pig's trotters.

Liquorice soup.

Ashed pig's teeth with water.

Single-lobed-ox-liver poisoning.

Human milk.

Poisonous dog-flesh.

Apricot kernels, contused, with water.

Mutton poisoning.

Liquorice, watery extract of.

Pork poisoning.

Crushed apricot kernel juice.

The juice squeezed out of pig's feces.

The juice from leeks.
Sodium sulphate.
Ashed pig's teeth in water.
Rhubarb broth.

Meat poisoned by arrows.

Soy bean juice.
Salt broth.

Meat from injured animals.

The bones of the respective animal ashed and given with water.
The juice from fresh leeks.
Coriander, boiled juice of.

Indigestible meat.

Take more of the juice of the same meat and it will digest.
The brain of the respective animal also aids digestion.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- ADS. =Arthur de C Sowerby, *The Naturalist in Manchuria*. 1922, Vols. 1—V, and other publications.
- CMC. =China Maritime Customs, *List of Chinese Medicines*, Shanghai, 1889.
- CP. =English Chinese Dictionary, Commercial Press, Shanghai, W. W. Yen, 1908.
- DH. =David Hooper, *Chinese drugs in Malaya*, *The Gardeners' Bulletin*, Strait Settlements, 1929, VI, pp. 1—163.
- FH. =Franz Hübotter, *Beitrage zur Kenntniss der chinesischen sowie der tibetisch-mongolischen Pharmacologie*, Berlin, 1914.
- KMN. =K. M. Nardkarni, *Indian Materia Medica*, Bombay, 1927, pp. 1417.
- MW. =W. H. Martindale, *Extra Pharmacopoeia*, London, 19th edition, 1928.
- PH. =*Materia Medica et Pharmacopée Sino-Annamites*, E. Perrot and P. Hurrier,
- PS. =F. Porter Smith, *Chinese Materia Medica*, Shanghai, 1871.
- PT. =本草綱目 Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu by Li Shih-chen.
- RB. =R. Braun, *List of Medicines exported from the Yangtse ports*, Chinese Maritime Customs, Shanghai, 1909.
- RL. =R. Lydekker, *Catalogue of Ungulate Mammals*, British Museum, 1913, Vols. 5.
- SC. =Severance Collection Notes.
- SK. =S. Kubota and T. Okanishi, *Folia Pharmacorum Sinicorum*, Chinese Materia Medica, Mukden, 1931.
- SS. =Septemus Sisson, *The Anatomy of the Domestic Animals*, London, 1917.
- UMST. =U. M. S. Torresani, *Furs and Skins*, China Maritime Customs, Shanghai, 1928.
- VM. =O. F. von Mollendorff, *N. C. Roy. As. Soc.*, 1877, **11**, 31—112.
- Wa. =Watson, E., *Articles of Chinese Commerce*, Shanghai, 1923, *The Maritime Customs* 11, Special Series No. 38.
- ZN. =動物學大辭典, 商務印書館, 上海, 第三版, March 1924.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA.

ANIMAL DRUGS.

II. THE WILD ANIMALS.

Bernard E. Read,

Department of Pharmacology,

Peiping Union Medical College, Peiping.

As pointed out by Von Mollendorff "to attain the complete identification of the nomenclature in use in Chinese zoology with that of Western (i. e. modern) science two things are necessary: firstly, an exhaustive knowledge of the Fauna Sinensis with especial reference to the geographical distribution of the animals; secondly, accurate and complete lists of the popular zoological terms in use in the different provinces." To this end in 1877 he brought together with his own observations those of the earlier explorers David, Swinhoe, Milne Edwards and others and gave a most valuable contribution to modern knowledge of Chinese fauna in the province of Chihli.

In recent years Sowerby is outstanding in his contributions to the natural history of Manchuria. His publications include reference to all the leading workers in this field, such as Stellar, Pallas, Schrenck, Radde, Heude, Anderson, Thomas, and others. Such authorities are invaluable in a study of the animal drugs of Chinese Materia Medica concerning which Porter Smith gave so little information.

The recent list of Chinese Mammals published in the Peking Natural History Bulletin by Gee, has been most useful in providing quick reference to the many scattered records concerning various animals, but it has taken many months reading of Chinese and foreign authorities to begin to establish the identity of some materials. The present determinations can only be regarded as general; for in some cases not enough is yet known to say definitely whether the facts reported can be sustained, for instance the Fei Fei No. 404 is listed as a baboon, a genus limited by some to Africa, and I can find no reference to the Arabian species having been found in China by a modern explorer; the definite species determinations are good for North China, but it is well known that where material is obtainable locally, each province will have its own type, the hedgehog in the time of the Pieh Lu was said to be specially collected in Hupeh, i. e. the *Erinaceus hanensis*, the material used today in Peiping I know is the local *E. dealbatus*, and Central and Southern China have quite a trade through Hankow of what may be even another genus of animal under the same Chinese name. In other cases only first hand knowledge of the crude drug material can clarify the indiscriminate use of some names; the name 'Shan Yang' No. 363 to most people would mean a goat, but it here definitely refers to the argali sheep, and a similar confusion of terminology is apparent for other things.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The Chinese literature referred to in my first article presents numerous difficulties. The drawings of the *Erh Ya* are good but the descriptions are most meagre. The old Chinese writers showed very keen powers of observation, but in dealing with the text of the *Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu* there are many quotations from earlier authorities of a conflicting character. In translating the chief uses of these animal drugs free use has again been made of the manuscripts from the Research Department of the Severance Union Medical College, Seoul, such has been most carefully checked, and used when found correct, general terms being used when the specific character of a disease is not indicated. Such was considered appropriate for a work that was empirical in character and based upon the generalized knowledge of the old writers, for there is no satisfactory way of putting into exact modern speech such things as the various forms of devil possession, and materia medica is concerned more with the properties of things than the character of disease which should be discussed in a separate treatise. Those interested in this subject are referred to the 醫宗金鑑, *Yi Tsung Chin Chien*.

BERNARD E. READ

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 51a, Animals No. 2.

獸類 WILD ANIMALS, 38 KINDS.

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
350	獅	Shih	The Lion. <i>Felis leo</i> , L.
351	虎	Hu	Tiger. <i>Felis tigris</i> , Linn.
352	豹	Pao	Leopard. <i>Felis leopardus</i> , L.
353	獐	Mo	Tapir. <i>Tapirus indicus</i> . (Malayanus)
354	象	Hsiang	Elephant. <i>Elephas asiaticus</i> , Blumenb.
355	犀	Hsi	The rhinoceros. <i>Rhinoceros indicus</i> , Linn.
356	犛牛	Mao Niu	The Yak. <i>Bos grunniens</i> , L.
357	牦牛	Mao Niu	The Domestic Yak. <i>Bos grunniens domestica</i> .
358	野馬	Yeh Ma	Mongolian pony. <i>Equus przewalskii</i> , Poliakoff.
359	野豬	Yeh Chu	Wild boar. <i>Sus palludosus</i> , Heude.
360	豪豬	Hao Chu	Common porcupine. <i>Hystrix cristata</i> , L.
361	熊	Hsiung	The Himalayan black bear. <i>Ursus torquatus</i> , Schinz.
362	麝羊	Ling Yang	Japanese Serow. <i>Nemorhaedus crispus</i> , Temm.
363	山羊	Shan Yang	The argali sheep. <i>Ovis argali</i> , Pall.
364	鹿	Lu	The sika deer. <i>Cervus sika</i> , Temm.
365	麋	Mi	Elk. <i>Alces machlis</i> .
366	雙頭鹿	Shuang T'ou Lu	The two headed deer. <i>Cervus swinhoii</i> .
367	麂	Chi	Chinese deer. <i>Moschus chinensis</i> .
368	麋	Chang	River deer. <i>Hydropotes inermis</i> , Swinhoe.
369	麝	Shé	Musk deer. <i>Moschus moschiferus</i> , Linn.
370	靈貓	Ling Mao	Common civet. <i>Viverra zibetha</i> , L.
371	貓	Mao	The Cat. <i>Felis domestica</i> , Briss.
372	狸	Li	Wild cat. <i>Felis catus</i> , L.
373	風狸	Feng Li	Sloth-monkey. <i>Loris sp.</i>

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 51b, Animals No. 2.

獸類 WILD ANIMALS, 38 KINDS.

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
374	狐	Hu	Fox. <i>Canis vulgaris</i> , Gray.
375	貉	Hê	Raccoon dog. <i>Canis procyonides</i> , Gray.
376	貓	T'uan	Chinese badger. <i>Meles chinensis</i> , Gray.
377	獾	Huan	The Common Badger. <i>Meles anakuma</i> , Temm.
378	木狗	Mu Kou	Silver fox. <i>Canis argentatus</i> .
379	豺	Ch'ai	The Ch'ai dog. <i>Canis lupus tchiliensis</i> , Matsch.
380	狼	Lang	Wolf. <i>Canis lupus</i> , L.
381	兔	T'u	Rabbit or Hare. <i>Lepus</i> sp.
382	敗筆	Pai Pi	Rabbit hair from old brushes.
383	山獺	Shan T'a	The Chinese otter. <i>Lutra lutra chinensis</i> , Gray.
384	水獺	Shui T'a	Fresh water otter. <i>Lutra lutra</i> , L.
385	海獺	Hai T'a	Sea otter. <i>Enhydris marina</i> , Erxl.
386	膾豚獸	Wu Na Shou	Beaver. <i>Castor fiber</i> , L.
387	獾	Hua	Unidentified.

350. 獅 SHIH. THE LION. FELIS LEO, L.

Li Shih-Chen: Williams, China Repository, VII, 595: ZN, 1685: G, 9911: Beddard, 393: Lydekker RNH., I, 358, figure: Papyrus Ebers B. C. 1500: CP:

Syn. 狻猊 *Suan Yi*: 𧇧 *Hsiao*:

The king of beasts, hence the name "Shih". The sancrit name is "Tseng Chia Pi". The lion is said to be native to the western borderlands of China. It is like a tiger only smaller, yellow in color like a golden red deccan dog, 獺狗 *Jou Kou*. Large head and small tail. There are dark colored animals. The head is as strong as copper on an iron neck. Hooked claws and saw-like teeth. Drooping ears, high nose, eyes as bright as lightning and a roar like thunder. It has long whiskers. The male has a bushy tail. It can travel 500 li a day. It is the chief of hairy animals. The teeth expresses its anger, and the tail conveys its pleasurable feeling. All animals fear its roar, making the horse urinate blood. The Erh Ya says it lives on the flesh of tigers and leopards. It can overcome a tiger, swallow a leopard, tear apart a rhinoceros, and rip up an elephant. By one breath it can cause the hair and feathers to drop off its prey. Its milk added to cows, sheep or horse milk will change them to water. Dead tigers and leopards fear to eat its flesh, and flies don't even rest on its tail, and everything fears it. To train a lion it must be taken within 7 days after it is born otherwise there is great difficulty.

屎. Shih. LION'S FECES.

Very foul smelling, reddish black in color. It has been confused with storax.

Taken for blood stasis, and as a general vermicide. When burnt the fumes act as a deodorant.

Lion fat was prescribed in the 17th century London Pharmacopoeia, for earache. It was held in high repute by the Romans, also the gall and the heart.

351. 虎 HU. THE TIGER. FELIS TIGRIS, L.

Pieh-Lu, 2nd. group: ZN, 661: G, 4920: ADS. II, 29, the Manchurian animal is *F. tigris longipilis*: Beddard, p. 394: Lydekker, RNH, I, 373, figure: PS: Linn. Syst. Nat., 1758. 10th edit., Vol. I, 41: Amer. Mus. Novitates, 1929, No. 360, p. 13: CP: Wa., 417: VM, 6: BE. 1:

Syn. 烏麤 *Wu T'u*; 大蟲 *Ta Ch'ung*; 李耳 *Li Erh*; PT.

An onomatopoeic name. The phonetical part of the character is said to resemble the animal lying down. Honan name 李父 *Li Fu*. (Sixty tigers were killed in one day in the mountains of Liaotung in 1682, and K'anghsi shot one in northern Chihli in 1691 see Du Halde, Desc. de la Chine, IV, 219-224.) Kiangsu, Anhui, Hunan name 李耳 *Li Erh*. Manchurian name 伯都 *Po Tu*.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

Li Shih Chen thinks *Li Erh* comes from 狸兒 *Li Erh*, because southerners like to call it a cat. Mr. Kuo P'u says it is because tigers only eat their victims up to ears. The Erh Ya name is 麋貓 *Chien Mao*, short haired cat. White tigers are called 彪 *Han*, and black tigers 彪 *Yü*.

A 彪 *Piao*, G, 9112: is a five toed kind of tiger; with horns it is termed 麋 *Ssu*, G, 10305 an amphibious beast.

It is the king of the mountain animals. It is shaped like a cat and is the size of a cow. A yellow coat with black spots. Saw-like teeth and hooked claws. Sharp bristle-like whiskers, the tongue is large and broad and full of spikes. Short necked and squat nosed. At night one eye is phosphorescent and provides light while the other eye is used for observation. It roars like thunder and causes a wind to rise. It enters the rutting season the first week of November, others say it comes when the moon is cloudy and that they only copulate once in a lifetime. Gestation is 7 months. The tiger has power of divination and can sense direction, mark the ground and find food thereby. Men have learnt their ways. In their diet they follow the lunar calendar. During the first half of the month they eat the head end of an animal, during the latter half of the month they eat the tail end. If after 3 attempts it fails to capture an animal it leaves it alone. Dog meat intoxicates tigers.

The smell of burning ram horn will drive them away. While they can kill men and animals, hedgehogs and rats though small can control them.

Pao P'u Tzu said that after 500 years they turn white. Old stories often tell of tigers changing into men and vice versa.

APPENDIX.

- 351.a 會耳 *Chiu Erh*. A huge tiger that lives on a noncarnivorous diet but it kills tigers and leopards. It has white body with black spots and a tail longer than the body. Kuo P'u says it is the same as the fabulous animal of mild disposition called 騶虞 *Tsou Yü*, W.
- 351.b 駮 *Po* a piebald horse—a fabulous tiger, W. Body like a horse, white body with a black tail, a single horn, serrated teeth with which it can eat tigers and leopards. It is pictured in the Shan Hai Ching. The Chou Shu calls it a 茲白 'Tzu Po'.
- 351.c 渠搜 *Ch'ü Sou*. also known as 胡犬 *Hu Ch'üan* or 露犬 *Lu Ch'üan* from Turkestan.
- 351.d 黃腰 *Huang Yao*. An animal with a weasel-like body with a cat head, when grown up it eats its mother. Though small it eats tigers, cows, and deer. Its back is yellow and belly is black. G. Busk, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1874, 146/150, has written a note on the cranial and dental characters of the tigers and leopards of China.
- 虎骨. *Hu Ku*. **TIGER BONES.** The head and skin bones. DH, 416: CMC, 483: PS: Wa, 565: BE 6: JPK, P. 163: RB, p. 17, from the Muntjac tiger; Yunnan, Szechuan, Formosa, Manchuria: Used in Annam, PH, p. 61: JR. No. 104:

The yellow ones from the males are best. Animals shot with arrsow should not be used, because the poison enters the bones and blood and is harmful to people. (Not given to pregnant women, supposed to cause difficult childbirth, Wa.)

The bones should be broken open and the marrow removed. Butter or urine or vinegar is applied, according to the type of prescription, and they are browned over a charcoal fire.

Acrid, slightly warming, nonpoisonous.

For removing all kinds of evil influences and calming fright. For curing bad ulcers, and rat-bite sores. For rheumatic pain in the joints and muscles, and muscle cramps. For abdominal pain, typhoid fever, malaria and hydrophobia. Placed on the roof it can keep devils away and so cure nightmare. A bath in tiger bone broth is good for rheumatic swellings of the bones and joints. The shin bones are excellent for treating painful swollen feet. It is applied with vinegar to the knees. New born children should be bathed in it to prevent infection, convulsions, devil possession, scabies and boils, it will then grow up without any sickness. It strengthens the bones, cures chronic dysentery, prolapse of the anus, and is taken to dislodge bones which have become stuck in the gullet. The powdered bone is applied to burns and to eruptions under the toe nail. (For paralysis, Regnault.)

Braun lists a glue made from the bones of a tiger, RB, p. 17: also CMC, 480, Wa, 417: 虎膠 Hu Chiao. Chin. Econc. J. 1929.4.43:

Used in place of the bone to impart courage and for the treatment of rheumatism, Wa.

威骨. Wei Ku. THE MAJESTIC BONE OF A TIEGR.

A curved bone like a 乙 character, one inch long, which grows on each side of the chest by the ribs. Worn by officials to give them poise. Non-official people hate them.

肉. Jou. TIGER FLESH. KMN, 1073, it checks VAYU, difficult of digestion: BE, 6:

Acid, bland, nonpoisonous. Said to be bad for the teeth, it should not be eaten in the 1st lunar month. The taste is not very good, it is earthy though it is all right salted.

For nausea, improves the vitality, and stops excessive salivation. For malaria. A talisman against 36 kinds of demons. A tonic to the stomach and spleen. For eye and rectal diseases—India.

膏. Kao. TIGER FAT.

虎脂 Hu Chih.

For all kinds of vomiting. For dog bite wounds. Applied in the rectum for bleeding hemorrhoids. Melted and applied to scabby and bald headed conditions in children.

血. Hsieh. TIGER BLOOD. JPK.

It builds up the constitution and strengthens the willpower.

肚. *Tu.* **STOMACH OF THE TIGER.**

To cure vomiting and to quieten the stomach.

腎. *Shen.* **TESTES OF THE TIGER.** JPK, p. 163:

For scrofula.

膽. *Tan.* **BILE OF THE TIGER**

For convulsions in children. For 'Kan' dysentery in children with restlessness and nervousness.

睛. *Ching.* **EYEBALL OF THE TIGER.** JPK.

Eyeballs are not used from animals that have died of sickness. The ball is macerated overnight in fresh sheep's blood, then separated and dried over a low flame, and powdered.

For epilepsy, malaria, fevers in children, and convulsions. For quietening nervous children. It clarifies the vision and removes membranes over the eye. It stops crying.

虎魄. *Hu P'o.* **THE SHADE OF A TIGER.** Wa, 150:

A mythological thing said to be found in the ground, an amber-like stone, which falls from the glance of a dying tiger when he is shot. Recommended for convulsions in children. Ordinary amber 琥珀 *Hu P'o* is a term derived from this, the idea being that the soul of the animal turns into a mineral. Wa, 150:

鼻. *Pi.* **THE NOSE OF THE TIGER.**

For epilepsy and for convulsions in children. Hung on the roof it will induce the birth of boys.

牙. *Ya.* **TIGER TEETH.**

Applied to sores on the penis and running sores. Taken for hydrophobia, and phthisis.

爪. *Chao.* **TIGER CLAWS.** BE. 5:

With the bones and hair of the paw of the male animal tied on a baby's arm as a talisman.

皮. *P'i.* **TIGER SKIN.** UMST, p. 36. Tls. 25 to 40:

Syn. 鼻毘 *Kao P'i.*

For malaria, and to keep away evil influences. Ashed and taken for infections fevers. It is not good to sleep on, it induces fear, and the hair is very poisonous to open wounds.

鬚. *Hsii.* **TIGER'S WHISKERS.**

Given for toothache.

屎. *Shih.* **TIGER'S FECES.**

Mixed with horse's urine and ashed, the dust is applied to whitlows. It is also used for bad boils and piles. It is taken to remove bones stuck in the gullet.

屎中骨. *Shih Chung Ku.* **BONES IN TIGER'S FECES.** sliced and ashed.

For burns and tetanus and to treat alcoholism.

352. 豹 PAO. THE LEOPARD. FELIS LEOPARDUS, L.

Pieh-lu, 2nd. group: Beddard, p. 395; Lydekker, RNH, I. 387, figure:

G, 86 7, *F. Fontanierii* M. E.: Also applies to the Siberian ounce *F. irbis* and the wild cat *F. microtis*, G: Se, *F. pardus*: ADS, II, p. 35, *F. pardus fontanierii*, Milne Edwards occupies S. W. Manchuria and parts of Inner Mongolia, *F. villosa* is in N. Manchuria, *F. uncia* the snow leopard is in W. China and Tibet: ZN, 1139: Brass, p. 6: J. O. Gray, Zool. Soc. Proc., 1867, p. 264: S. W. Williams, China Reposit., VII, 44/49: Amer. Mus. Novitates, 1929, 366, p. 12: UMST, p. 24: PS: CP: Annam PH., p. 62: Von Mollendorff, No. 7:

Syn. 程 *Ch'eng*, 失刺孫 *Shih T'zu Sun*, PT:

The name is given on account of the fierce character of the animal 'Pao Lieh' meaning fierce. The spine is very long, and is arched when the animal walks.

The Shan Hai Ching describes a black leopard, the Shih Ching has a red leopard, with a black tail. The Erh Ya refers to the "white leopard" which is the 豹 *Mo*, the Tapir. (It is more likely that this refers to the *F. uncia*, or the Irbis, Chinese name *Liang*, Brass, 8.)

It has reddish-yellow hair with large round black spots holed in the centre like cash, placed in regular order.

There is another species unspotted and smaller.

Li Shih Chen—They come from Liaotung and the mountains of South-west China (Yunnan & Kueichow). Shaped like a tiger, smaller, with a white face, and round head. It is proud of its spots. When it has round spots it is called the "guinea leopard" 金錢豹, *Leopardus japonicus*, G. 8697, the skin of which makes good clothing. An inferior type has spots like artemesia leaves and is called "Ai yeh Pao", 艾葉豹 this is the tiger cat of Formosa, *Leopardus brachyurus*, G. Brass, 9. Eastern Turkestan has a golden striped species.

Leopards fear snakes, hedgehogs and rats, and are eaten by lions and other beasts. At death its head is placed on its native hill so that it will always remember its home.

Leopard placenta is one of the 8 precious delicacies of food. Phoenix marrow, bear's paws, ape's lips, dragon's liver, tail of the carp, roasted owl, and cicada cheese. Some people include domedary hump, and deer's tail.

肉. Jou. LEOPARD'S FLESH.

Acid, bland, nonpoisonous. Not to be eaten in the first lunar month, otherwise it shortens life and lessens virility. It quietens the viscera, strengthening to fractures, improves the vitality, lightening the step, strengthening the bones and ligaments and gives courage to endure both heat and cold. Keeps away evil diseases, and benefits the kidneys.

脂. Chih. LEOPARD FAT. 17th. century London Pharmacopoeia.

For the face and to promote the growth of hair.

鼻. *Pi*. **THE NOSE.**

Boiled with the nose of a fox, the decoction will expel fox-devils.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **LEOPARD'S CRANIUM.**

As a pillow it keeps away evil spirits. Ashed and mixed with water it is used for pityriasis alba of the head.

皮. *P'i*. **LEOPARD'S SKIN.** UMST, p. 24, 5 species:

Must not be used as a sleeping mat it causes fear to enter ones soul, and the hair if it enters open wounds is poisonous, but it has been known to keep away ghosts.

Porter-Smith refers to the bones and claws being used as a tonic.

353. 貘. *MO*. THE MALAYAN TAPIR. TAPIRUS INDICUS (Malayanus).

宋圖經: ZN, 2281: The Malayan tapir, formerly found in Szechuan, G, 7990: W. A. Remusat, Mel. As., I, 253/256, J. AS. 1824, IV, 161/165: Lydekker RNH, II, 459, fig.: Lydekker, V, 40: Elliott, Field Museum Zool. Pub., VIII, p. 101, 1907: Beddard, p. 252: CP:

Syn. 白豹 *Pai Pao*, *Erh Ya*:

The skins are used as rugs and mattresses. It is a good absorbent of body vapours.

It is like a bear, head small, feet short, with a black and white striped skin. The hair is short and glossy. It enjoys eating copper and iron things, bamboo, bones, and venomous snakes. Local people lose their axes and cooking utensils. The urine can dissolve iron. Its joints are very straight and strong, the bones are solid without marrow. In the T'ang dynasty it was a favorite motif for screens.

It occurs in Omei Mts., Szechuan, and Yunnan. It has a nose like an elephant, eyes like a rhinoceros, tail like a cow, and feet like a tiger.

The teeth and bones are so hard that the blades of axes are broken by them. Firing does not effect the bones. It is said that antelope horn can break a diamond, so can the bones of a tapir.

353a. 嚙鐵. *Nieh T'ieh*. A southern species. The size of a water buffalo, black and shiny. The feces are as hard as iron. One animal was recorded 7 feet high which could travel 300 li a day.

353b. 豸. *Han*. G, 3785. A monstrous terrific beast producing one horn. G, the tapir. Some accounts ally it with the Mongolian mastiff 胡狗 *Hu Kou*. It is like a black fox, 7 feet long, in its old age it has scales. It can eat tigers, leopards, crocodiles, and metals. Hunters are afraid of it.

353c. 狡兔. *Chiao T'u*. In The K'un-Wu mountains there is a rabbit-like animal which is iron eating. The male is yellow and the female white.

皮. *P'i.* **THE SKIN OF THE TAPIR.**

Slept on it will remove heat boils, and it keeps off damp and bad infections.

膏. *Kao.* **FAT OF THE TAPIR.**

For carbuncles. It is well absorbed.

屎. *Shih.* **FECES OF THE TAPIR.**

Taken to dissolve copper or iron objects which have been accidentally swallowed.

354. 象, HSIANG. THE INDIAN ELEPHANT. ELEPHANS ASIATICUS,
Blumenb. (Syn. *E. Indicus*).

Sung K'ai-Pao: Lydekker, V, 81, Syn. *E. maximus*: Beddard, Camb. Nat. Hist. London, 1909, p. 227: G, 4287: ZN, 1589: W: Williams, China Repository, VII, 136/141: KMN, p. 1090: CP: E. H. Parker China Review, XIV, 357: Andrews, Guide to Elephants Brit. Mus, 1908, p. 39: Lydekker, RNH, II, 528, figure: Mus. Frid. Adolph, 1754, I, 14: SK, p. 95, *E. maximus*, L.: Annam, PH, p. 66:

Syn. 伽耶 *Chieh Yeh*, PT:

According to Laufer its former existence in China is well authenticated by linguistic, pictographic, historical and archeological evidence.

The character resembles the shape of an elephant's ear, tooth, trunk, and feet. In cosmogony the for or "Hsiang" of things in the cosmos is the resultant of the dual forces of life acting upon the chaos, which form shapes just as the elephant's tusk when influenced by thunder shows various designs which disappear when the thunder ceases. Elephants used to roam in Yunnan and Kwangtung. (Kingsmill states that elephants certainly lived in Honan, B. C. 600, No. Chi. R. A. SP., 1877, 11, 1. In prehistoric times they existed in Chihli. Fossil material has been found at Ch'ou K'ou Tien). C.W. Bishop has written upon The Elephant and its Ivory in Ancient China, J. Amer. Orient. Soc., 1921, 41, 290-306. The trunk is peculiar to the elephant, the other parts of the anatomy resemble 12 other animals. The bile also is unusual in being said to come from the various 12 parts of the body according to the month of the year. It is said not to come from the liver. Hsu Hsuan made its distribution seasonal, in spring it was supposed to be in the front left foot, in autumn in the left hind foot, in winter the hind right foot, and in summer the front right foot. (Elephants have no gall-bladder).

The character 象 *Hsiang* also means an image or form:—because in ancient days from the bones of a dead elephant the shape of the living animal was inferred, G, 4287.

牙. *Ya.* **ELEPHANT'S TUSK. SK, p. 95: IVORY.**

KMN, Indian Mat. Med., 1090: Annam, PH, 66: JPK, p. 164: Wa, 435, The tusks of various animals.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The best are taken from the hunted animals, second come those of animals who have sickened and died, and very inferior is the material shed in the mountains. Siberian mammoth tusks are very common, Beddard: SG, 183, Wa.

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

"Ivory in China" by B. Laufer, Field Museum Anthropology Leaflet, 1925, pp. 1-78, is full of good reference material upon this subject.

To remove iron or foreign bodies which have entered the skin apply the parings with water. Boiled in water it is diuretic. The ash is said to be antidiuretic.

For epilepsy. Taken with water to remove foreign bodies lodged in the throat. For osteomyelitis. For smallpox.

In Indian medicine up to one gram is given for jaundice, sterility in the female and for leucorrhoea, KMN.

肉. *Jou.* **ELEPHANT FLESH.** Annam, PH, p. 66.

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous. According to Beddard it was considered cooling.

Taken in excess it will make a person heavy.

The fresh juice is diuretic. The ash is given for polyuria. The ash is applied with oil to bald spots.

膽. *Tan.* **ELEPHANT BILE.** (This name also refers to Aloes, RB, p. 26.) Wa, 305: JPK, p. 164:

Bitter, cooling, slightly poisonous.

"No elephant has a gall-bladder", F. E. Beddard, Cambridge Natural History, London, 1909, p. 220.

It will clarify the vision. It is applied to swollen ulcers. For halitosis, apply a little on cotton and pack between the gums at night. Taken for pterygium.

睛. *Ching* **ELEPHANT'S EYEBALL.** JPK, 164:

Mashed in human milk and applied to diseases of the eye.

皮. *P'i.* **ELEPHANT'S SKIN.** RB, p. 15, Yunnan, Kwangsi, Tls. 15 a picul: FH, p. 134: JPK, p. 164: SK, p. 95: Annam PH. p. 61: Wa, 429 (from the rhinoceros).

Ashed and applied with oil to injuries from metal weapons which will not heal, and to ulcers (venereal ?)

(The term 象皮 Hsiang P'i is wrongly used for rubber which is more often written 橡皮 (chestnut-oak skin) though it does not come from an oak.)

骨. *Ku*. **ELEPHANT BONE.** Annam, PH, p. 66:

A general antidote to poisons. The ash is good for weakness of the stomach, eructation, heartburn, vomiting, cholera, diarrhoea, colic and poor appetite. The small horizontal bone on the chest, ashed and taken with wine will cause a man to float.

Elephants milk is used in Indian medicine for rheumatism, KMN: and for the eyes.

355. 犀. HSI. THE INDIAN RHINOCEROS. RHINOCEROS INDICUS,
L. (Syn. R. UNICORNIS, L.)

* Shen-Nung, 2nd. group: Lydekker, V, 42: Beddard, Mammals, p. 255: G, 4128, 10298: ZN, 1263: FPS: RB: Williams, China Repository, VII, 136/141: CP: Lydekker, RNH, II, 465, figure: KMN, 1074: Wa, 429:

Syn. 兕 Ssu, PT, G: *R. Unicornis*, Lydekker:

The original character was said to resemble the animal. The female was known as 兕 Ssu or 沙犀 "Sha Hsi". The Buddhist scriptures refer to it as 竭伽 "Chieh Ch'ieh".

From Yunnan, and Kansu. In Hunan at Wu Ling Hsien and ancient Ning Chow (Kueichow and Yunnan), and Kwangtung. (600 BC. they existed in Honan, Kingsmill, q. v.)

Two horns from the forehead (i. e. the Sumatra species). The 通天犀 "T'ung T'ien Hsi" has a white line along the whole length, and the night dew does not wet the horn. This species is best for medicine. Some call this

*** SHEN-NUNG'S PEN TS'AO.**

Altogether there are 165 drugs belonging to the animal kingdom in the Shen-Nung Pen Ts'ao which are cited by Li Shih-Chen in the Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu. Shen-Nung's Materia Medica was comprised of 355 drugs arranged in 3 groups.

The first group of 120 drugs were termed "Sovereign" remedies. They were said to support life and hence associated with 天 heaven, and were considered harmless in any quantity. Continuous use was said to make the body light in weight, to increase the vitality and give longevity without senility. It included such drugs as lotus, liquorice and ginseng.

The second group of 120 drugs were considered to be like officials, related to man and human nature. They were to be used with care to re-establish loss of strength and to build up the body against violent diseases. It included such drugs as rhinoceros horn, peony and gentian.

The third group of 125 drugs were looked upon as deputies or agents assisting the body in overcoming disease. Hence they are associated with 地 earth, are poisonous and should not be introduced into the body continuously. They open up the body overcoming obstructions to the natural excretions, reduce abnormal temperature and assist in bringing the body back to normal. It included such poison plants as croton and aconite, and cantharides and bats.

Porter-Smith refers to a jelly 海犀膏 *Hai Hsi Kao* made from rhinoceros skin. In Annam the skin is used for hepatic colic, PH, p. 61: JR, No. 346: JPK, 164.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

水犀角 Shui Hsi Chüeh. 駭鷄犀 Hai Chi Hsi is another old classical name. There are also the extra long horns of the female of which the grain is very fine, distinct and white, hence it is commonly known as 班犀 Pan Hsi, but it is not as good as the horn of the male.

The rhinoceros has a head and belly like a pig. Short feet with 3 toes like an elephant. It is black, the tongue is barbed and it likes to eat thorns. There are 3 hairs to each follicle, like a pig. There are single horned, double and triple horned species (The Indian, Sumatra and a third unknown or extinct species). The Erh Ya Says the female is like a cow and the male is like a pig. Kuo P'u says that the female has only one horn, it is dark colored and weighs 1,000 catties. The male is like a buffalo with the 3 horns, in line from the nose, forehead and cranium.

The horn on the nose is permanent and known as the 奴角 "Nu Chiao". 胡帽犀 Hu Mao Hsi is a name for a one-horned animal with the horn on the nose. The two horned animals are termed 毛犀 Mao Hsi, (This is the *Rhinoceros sumatrensis* see Beddard and which is hairy and two horned. Lydekker RNH, II, 471, figure:)

The 通天角 *T'ung T'ien Chüeh* is hollow and the animal can breathe air or squirt water through it. The Persians called elephant tusk "white opaque", and rhinoceros horn the "black opaque" because it was hard to identify. 墮羅犀 Chui Lo Hsi was the largest kind, the horns weighed 7 or 8 catties, said to come from old animals. The horns with big dark mottle marks were used for belt buckles, those with spreading veins and light colored were used to make cups. The skin of the female was so thick and strong it was used for armour. The animals were caught by rigging up a rotten wood fence which the animals like to lean against, and falling down as the wood breaks they cannot rise quickly and are easily killed. It is said to shed its horn each year, and bury it in the ground, if carefully replaced by wooden immitations 3 times the animal will continue to plant its horns in the same place year by year.

They come from Turkestan, and the S. W. (Today chiefly from India, Siam, Cochinchina and Sumatra).

There are 山犀 Shan Hsi, 水犀 Shui Hsi, 兕犀 Ssu Hsi, and 毛犀 Mao Hsi. They have 2 horns the longest one from the nose. The 水犀 Shui Hsi has scales. The 兕犀 Ssu Hsi is the female and has one horn only from the head. The grain of the horn is fine and the marks are white and clear. It was once called the 獨角犀 Tu Chiao Hsi. (*Rhinoceros unicornis*, L. Syst. Nat., 1758, Vol. 1, p. 56:)

犀角. *Hsi Chüeh*. **RHINOCEROS HORN**, G. RB. p. 15, Siam, and south: Szechuan, Kueichow, Yunnan and Kansu, Tls. 2500 a picul: JPK, p. 164:

Syn. Foreign name 低密 *Ti Mi*, PT.

E. H. Parker, China Review, XIV, 359: Beddard, p. 255: FH, p. 131: CMC, 386: SK, p. 96: PS: JR, No. 345: Wa, 429, also from the *R. sondaicus*.

The large inferior horns are known as 犛角 Chu Chiao. W. A. C., London, 1677: Chin. Ecom. J. 1929, 4, 42:

The best is from the freshly killed male animal. The steamed material used for making cups is useless. There are two kinds, black and white, the black is superior. Horns that have been shed are inferior. The tip is considered to have the most virtue. 奴犀 *Nu Hsi*, the nose horn and horns from the female, sick, twin, or dryskinned animals are not used. They use the horns that are dense black in color, and with the skin in folds, and those that when broken open have a glossy fracture. When placed in the bosom it becomes brittle, so that it is said "As Jade can make gold crumble so body heat will pulverise rhinoceros horn".

Bitter, acid, saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Incompatible with aconite. It should not be taken by pregnant women it will kill the foetus.

As an antidote to poisons (In Europe it was said to fall to pieces if poison were poured into it, Beddard). To cure devil possession and keep away all evil spirits and miasmas. For gelsemium and snake poisoning. To remove hallucinations and bewitching nightmares. Continuous administration lightens the body and makes one very robust. For typhoid, headache, and feverish colds. For carbuncles and boils full of pus. For intermittent fevers with delerium.

To expel fear and anxiety, to calm the liver and clear the vision. It is a sedative to the viscera, a tonic, antipyretic. It dissolves phlegm. It is an antidote to the evil miasma of hill streams. For infantile convulsions and dysentery.

Ashed and taken with water to treat violent vomiting, food poisoning, and overdosage of poisonous drugs. For arthritis, melancholia, loss of the voice.

Ground up to a paste with water it is given for hematemesis, epistaxis, rectal bleeding, heavy smallpox, etc.

356. 犛牛. MAO NIU. (Li Niu) The grunting ox. TIBETAN YAK. BOS GRUNNIENS, L. (*Poephagus grunniens*).

Li Shih-Chen: Lydekker, I, 31: Linn, Syst. Nat., 1766, I, 99: Beddard, p. 320: CP: G, 6938: W (Li Niu): AN, 1916: M. Joly, Bull. Soc. Zool. Acclim, 1854, I, 56-57, 190-212: S. Tumer, As. Res. IV, 351/353: Lydekker RNH, II, 185, figure: PS: KMN, 1074: National Geographic Mag. 1925. 48. 640, illustrated: ADS. No. Chi. RASP. 1916, 47, 80, in Kansu and Szechuan.

Syn. 毛犀 Mao Hsi, 貓牛 Mao Niu, 摩牛 Ma Niu, 犛牛 Tso Niu, 竹牛 Chu Niu, 犛牛 Ch'ou Niu, PT:

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The tail of this and the hairy domestic yak (357) are used as chowries fastened to the end of flag poles, the insignia of a high grandee in the old days. The horns of this yak are better than those of the domestic yak, but the latter has a better tail for chowry purposes. (These are sold under the name 犀牛尾 Hsi Niu Wei, Tls. 180 a picul, RB: Wa, 49:)

The yak comes from the territories southwest of China, wild in the high mountainous country. It is black and weighs over 1,000 catties. The horns are very much like the rhinoceros horn but there are no rice marks (粟紋 Su Wen).

Living specimens in Peiping zoo.

SUBHEADING.

犛牛. *Wei Niu*. Syn. 夔牛 *K'uei Niu*. (The large ox).

Larger than a cow. From the hills of Szechuan, weighing several thousand catties.

犛牛. *T'ang Niu*. A dark yellow ox that lives with snakes, fond of salt with which it can be trapped. The horns are like jade and make good utensils.

海牛. *Hai Niu*. SEA COW. **RHYTINA GIGAS.**

See Sowerby N. Man., II, 135.

This animal became extinct in 1768.

It is said to be shaped like a cow, with fin-like feet, and a forked tail. The skin is very soft and used for many purposes. The oil was used in lamps. For a note on Dugong oil see Watson.

月支牛. *Yüeh Chih Niu*.

From western Mongolia and Sinkiang. Credited with phenomenal growth of flesh after it has been injured.

山牛. *Shan Niu*.

A horned animal with antlers like a deer.

角. *Cküeh*. **YAK HORN.**

Acid, saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For convulsions, sunstroke, and blood diseases.

Often substituted for genuine rhinoceros horn, but it does not have the same grain.

黃. *Huang*. **YAK BEZOAR.** Gallstone.

Bitter and mild.

For convulsions and delerium.

Used to adulterate cow bezoar, but it is hard and not fragrant.

357. 犛牛 MAO NIU. THE HAIRY YAK. BOS GRUNNIENS DOMESTICUS.

Li Shih-Chen: Lydekker, RNH, II, 188: G. 7680: Erh Ya: FPS: ZN as a subheading of the Yak: W, the yak or grunting ox:

Syn. 犏牛 *Lieh Niu*, PT. 犏牛 *P'ien Niu*, PT, G. W:

Smaller than the great yak (356). It is the crossbreed between a yak and a zebu *

It comes from Kansu, and the countries bordering the SW. of China. It is like a water buffalo, the body is long, and it is very strong, and can race along with very heavy loads and is intractable. The rump, knees, tail, and neck all have black hair over a foot long. The tail is bushy and apt to catch in trees and bushes. The meat was classed with elephant steak as of the finest in the Ch'un Ch'iu.

The domestic yak of Tibet is also called *p'ien niu*, G, 9218. A zebu or Brahminee bull is also termed *p'ien niu*, W.

喉醫. *Hou Yen*. **THE THYROID AND EPIGLOTTIS OF THE DOMESTIC YAK.**

SC, Laryngeal cartilage:

A little over 2 inches of the trachea with the two side pieces (thyroid material) are taken and boiled or ashed and given just before sleep, then the epiglottis is taken and well chewed for half an hour and eventually swallowed. Two doses produce a miraculous effect in reducing goitre.

358. 野馬. YEH MA. THE WILD HORSE. EQUUS PRZEWALSKII,
Poliakoff.

Li Shih-Chen: Special Bulletin by W. Solensky, London, 1907: Beddard, p. 241: A.D.S. Naturalist's notebook, pp. 32-37: Annals Nat. Hist., 1881, 5s., VIII, 16-26, M. Poliakoff: Nature 1884, **30**, 391-2; 1903, **68**, 271-4: M. E. L. Trouessart. Bull. Museum Nat. Hist., 1906, 359/360: Lydekker, RNH, II, 494: Poliakoff, Izvestia Soc. Imp. Russ. Geogr., 1881, p. 1, plates:

Smaller than the ordinary horse. From Mongolia. In Li Shih-chen's time they were said to be wild in Shensi, Kansu and the Liaotung Peninsular. Their skins were used to make coats. The meat was like ordinary horse flesh except that it was said to be free from dirt if dropped on the ground.

The Erh Ya describes 2 kinds. One horned like a deer termed 驢 Chün, and a hornless variety called 騏 Ch'i. The Shan Hai Ching describes another wild horse under the name 騊駼 T'ao T'u.

"If a distinct form, it is interesting, as breaking down the distinctions between horses and asses. The species possesses the four callosities of the horse, but has a poorer mane and an asinine tail", Beddard.

W. H. Flower suggests that this animal may prove to be a hybrid between the tarpan and the Kiang. Lydekker.

*"The hybrid from *Bos taurus* (bull) and *Bos grunniens* (cow) furnishes excellent flesh, and large herds are driven to Irkutsk". "The milk is very rich". Porter-Smith.

Swinhoe refers to a species of zebu, *Bos indicus chinensis*.

肉. *Jou*. **MEAT OF THE WILD HORSE.**

Sweet, bland, slightly poisonous.

Given for tetanus and paralysis.

陰莖. *Yin Ching*. **PENIS OF THE WILD HORSE.**

Acid, saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

Given for impotency and lack of semen.

359. 野豬. YEH CHU. WILD BOAR. SUS PALLUDOSUS, Heude.

T'ang Pen Ts'ao: ZN, 1347: ADS, II, 128: SC, Heude, Mem. Nat. Hist. Chine, 1888, III, 193: CP: ADS. No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 80, five species N. China: Brass, p. 56, *S. aper*:

Common in Shansi and Loyang (This is the Yangtse wild pig which has a distinct reddish brown tinge).

It is like the domestic animal. The belly is smaller and the legs longer. Dark grey colour. It has tusks and can fight with tigers. As a protection against arrows and knives, it rubs up against pine trees and smears its body with soft resin and then rolls in gravel and mud to make a hard coat. It is harmful to crops and eats snakes. It is able to make its own shelter from the rain and sun, out of branches and leaves put together in good fashion.

The Kwangsi pig is *S. meles*, Heude. The Moupin pig occurs in Shansi and Szechuan across to Tibet *S. moupinensis*, M. Edw. The Manchurian wild pig is larger, *S. gigas*, Heude. These undoubtedly are used each in its own area. *S. leucomystax*, T. et S. is in central Japan. (ADS, II, 128)

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE WILD BOAR.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous. This pig unlike the domestic animal does not sicken, but animals with dark hoofs are not very good for one.

It should not be taken with croton seeds.

Anticonvulsant. Skin fattener. Beneficial to the five viscera. For old bleeding hemorrhoids and hemorrhagic dysentery.

脂. *Chih*. **FAT OF WILD BOAR.**

Purified in the 12th month.

Galactagogue. For scabies and toxic swellings.

黃. *Huang*. **BOAR BEZOAR.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

It is found in the gall-bladder after the animal is 3 years old, even then it is rare.

Styptic. Fleshforming, anticonvulsant. Powdered and given in water for dysentery. Given to shy and intractible children suffering from liver trouble.

膽. *Tan*. **BILE OF THE WILD BOAR.**

For convulsions, and infectious fevers. Various 瘡 *Kan* infections in children.

齒. *Ch'ih*. **TEETH OF THE WILD BOAR.** London, 1677, Wac:

Ashed and given in water for snake bite.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **CRANIUM OF THE WILD BOAR.**

For malaria and chronic rectal bleeding.

外腎. *Wai Shen*. **TESTES OF THE WILD BOAR.**

Ashed with the scrotum.

For leucorrhoea, bloody diarrhoea and flatus.

皮. *P'i*. **SKIN OF THE WILD BOAR.**

Ashed and applied to running sores.

360. 豪豬. HAO CHU. COMMON PORCUPINE. HYSTRIX CRISTATA,
L. (*H. suberistata*, Swinhoe.)

G, 3874: Li Shih-chen: ZN, 1856: SC: Shih-liao-pen-ts'ao: Beddard, p. 500: Lydekker, RNH, III, 167, fig: Ebers Papyrus, BC. 1500: G, 3874: W: CP:

Syn. 豪彘 *Hao Chih*, G: 蒿豬 *Hao Chu*, PT: 山豬 *Shan Chu*, PT: 獾綸 *Yuan Yü*, G, 13586, PT: 獾豬 *Wan Chu*, 鸞豬 *Luan Chu*, PT. 箭豬 *Chien Chu*, CP:

From the wild mountains of Shensi, Loyang and Kiangsu. In flocks which harm the crops. When angered by the farmer, it will show fight, running its quills into its attacker. The quills are as thick as chopsticks pointed like a hairpin. White in center and black at both ends, measuring up to 1 foot. The people of Sinkiang use the skin to make shoes. Kuo P'u says they are hermaphroditic with arbitrary self determination of sex. The spring fish of the South Seas are said to metamorphose into porcupines by geomantic influence changing from the S. W. to N.

The porcupine was introduced into the Pen Ts'ao by Li Shih Chen who found it recorded in Meng's Shih Liao Pen Ts'ao as a subheading under hedgehogs.

肉 *Jou*. **PORCUPINE FLESH.**

Sweet, very cooling, *poisonous*.

Must not be eaten in large amount. It is weakening. Fattening and good for the large intestine.

肚及尿. *Tu Chi Sui*. **THE STOMACH AND URINE OF THE PORCUPINE.**

Cooling, nonpoisonous.

Taken after heating to dryness in warm wine on an empty stomach for edemas, beri-beri, jaundice, and gaseous distension of the abdomen.

361. 熊. HSIUNG. THE HIMALAYAN BLACK BEAR. URSUS TORQUATUS, Schinz.

Shen-Nung, 1st. group: Syn. *U. tibetanus*, Brass, p. 37: G, 4700: W: ZN, 1798: SC: ADS, II, 59, Syn *Selenarctos t.*: Lydekker, RNH, II, 20, fig: RB, p. 17: UMST, p. 3: SK: CP: VM, No. 16: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, **47**, 79, list of five bears in North China.

Syn. 蟄獸 *Chê Shou*, W. The hibernating animal, G, 560, the bear.

The name refers to the brave or martial character of the animal, the character was written to resemble its shape. It lives in trees.

Syn. 豬熊 *Chu Hsiung*, PT.

From Shensi (Yungchow) it comes out in the 11th month. Anhui and Kansu. (The Manchurian black bear is *Selenarctos ussuricus*, ADS, p. 53.)

There is some association of the bear with early cosmogony and the formation of the seas. A species supposed to inhabit the seas is called 能 *Neng* which is a transformation of the great fish 鯨 *Kun* who failed to make the first oceans.

Agile, it can climb tall trees. Upon seeing a man it bows to the ground. It hibernates in winter when if hungry it just licks its paws. It comes out in spring. The feet are called 蹠 *Fan*, and constitute one of the 8 precious delicacies in food. Salt acts as a poison to them.

As large as a boar, eyes vertical, humanlike feet, black, very fat in spring and summer, thick skinned with tendons that stand out. It likes dropping down from trees. Travelling several thousand li it sleeps in caves and hollow trees which are commonly known as "bear's hotels". The gall is said to move into the head, belly and paws according to the season; similar to the elephant.

熊. P'i. URSUS ARCTOS, L. THE BROWN BEAR. (Yellow bear)

G, 9031: ZN, 1799: ADS, II, 51: Beddard, 442: Lydekker, RNH, II, 9, fig: SK, 95: VM, No. 16: BE, 37:

Syn. 黃熊 *Huang Hsiung*, PT: 人熊 *Jen Hsiung*, PT: G, 4700.

Yellowish white. Long head and legs. Fierce and absolutely fearless. It can uproot trees. Tigers fear them. It will attack and capture man. It's fat is as good as that from the black bear.

The term 羆熊 *Chia Hsiung* is the Shensi-Kansu name for this animal. The 爾雅翼 *Erh Ya Yi* gives 2 other names 豬熊 *Chu Hsiung* and 馬熊 *Ma Hsiung*.

魁. T'ui. URSUS ARCTOS COLLARIS, Japanese brown bear. (Red bear).

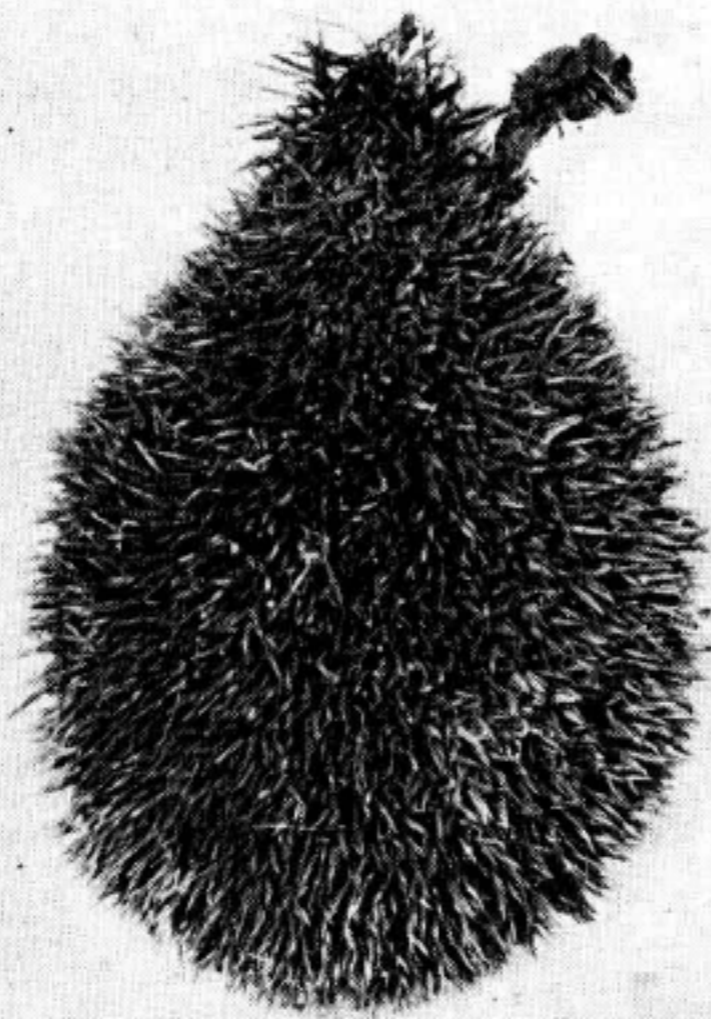
Syn. 赤熊 *Ch'ih Hsiung*.

G, 12187, a fabulous animal like a small bear: ZN, 1799: Brass, p. 40: Small and yellowish red in colour.

熊掌



Bear's Paw.
Peking market.



皮蝟刺

Hedgehog Skin.
Chihli market.

脂. *Chih.* **BEAR'S GREASE.** SC: FPS: ACW, 17th century Europe:

Syn. 熊白 *Hsiung Pai*.

From the back of the animal. White like jade.

Sweet, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

Used in lamps the smoke is weakening to the eyes, making them lose their lustre.

Prolonged use as a food strengthens the mind, prevents hunger, lightens the body and gives longevity.

To remove numbness and total loss of sensation. For feverish colds. Applies to blacken the hair, and promote its growth. (It is credited with the same power of nourishing the hair in China as in the west, FPS) To cure baldness and ringworm. To remove pimples and blackheads from the face.

A tonic and a cure for 'wind' diseases, rheumatism.

肉. *Jou.* **BEAR MEAT.** SK, p. 105 for nerve pain: KMN, 1073, classed with tiger meat in Indian medicine.

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

Should not be taken if the patient has a chronic disease.

For rheumatism, and weakness. The uses are the same as for bear's grease. For beri-beri with paralysis.

掌. *Chang.* **BEAR'S PAW.** PS. Syn. 熊蹯 *Hsiung Fan*:

When eaten it keep off colds and benefits the vitality.

膽. *Tan.* **BEAR'S GALL.** RB; p. 17, Manchuria, Shensi, Kansu, Tls. 43 a catty: CMC, 473, Szechuan: JPK, p. 162: JR, No. 77: SK, p. 95: PS: Wa, 322 with descriptions: ACW, 17th century London:

The airdried material is used. It is so commonly adulterated that one should test it in water. One drop of the genuine article will give a line in the water which does not spread. Drawn across a pool of ink, the ink should retreat from the tract, RB.

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For epidemic fevers, jaundice, chronic summer dysentery.

For angina pectoris, ear and nose ulcers, and all evil sores. Anthelmintic. Infantile convulsions. Antipyretic. It clears the mind, quietens the liver, and clears the sight. To remove pterygium. For conjunctivitis, blindness in the newborn and various eye troubles. For caries.

腦髓. *Nao Sui.* **SPINAL CORD OF THE BEAR.**

For deafness and giddiness. Rubbed on the scalp to promote the growth of hair and remove dandruff.

血. *Hsieh.* **BLOOD OF THE BEAR.**

For nervousness in children.

骨. *Ku.* **BONES OF THE BEAR.** SK, p. 95:

For rheumatism of the joints, and nervousness in children.

The Lungs were used in London Pharmacopoeia, 1677, WAC.

362. 麇羊. LING YANG. THE JAPANESE SEROW. ANTELOPE.
A goat-antelope. **NEMORRHAEDUS CRISPA**, David.

Syn. *Antelope crispa*, David: *Antelope caudata*, Edw: *Capricornis crispus* Lydekker: Shen-Nung, 2nd. group: Lydekker, I, 200: Beddard, 326: Lydekker, RNH, II, 259: BE, 55: CP: FH=antelope, p. 132: UMST, refers this name to 4 species of gazelle, q. v.: VM: G, 7227: FPS: SC: ZD, 1301: Shen-nung, Middle Class: PS.—a kind of chamois: Wa, incorrectly associates this with the antelope gutturosa, which is the *Huang Yang*, see No. 325. In Cambodian medicine, Norodom, Paris, 1929: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, **47**, 80, five serows in N. China.

Syn. 羚羊 *Ling Yang*, PT; G, 7208; CP=the Yakin: 麇羊 *Hsien Yang*, G, 4505, PT: 九尾羊 *Chiu Wei Yang*, PT: 山羊 *Shan Yang*, VM: 青羊 *Ch'ing Yang*, VM:

Unlike the deer which travels and sleeps in flocks, it sleeps alone at night in trees secured by its horns far away and secure from its enemies, hence the name, which indicates a "clever deer". The horns come from Shensi and Shih Ch'eng. (Among the several places of this name this must refer to the western provinces).

It is said to have 9 tufts of hair from the chest to the tail. The Sinkiang animals are said to have a very fine grained round horn different from the horns of the argali sheep which are more coarsely grained on 2 sides point downwards and are not used in medicine.

Like a big black sheep, coarse wool, 2 short horns, true horns show the mark where the animal has hung from trees. These are 1 to 2 feet long with nodes finger distance apart. They are sharply pointed.

山驢. Shan Lii. MOUNTAIN DONKEY.

Two types are described. 羴 Yü which has a body like a donkey, it is cloven hoofed, tail like a horse, and horns like an antelope which are offered as a substitute in medicine. In the Hsia dynasty this term applied to a black ram, W: G, 13580. The 驢 Yün has a body like an antelope, it has 4 horns, a horselike tail, clawed hoofs, and it brays its name yün.

羚羊角. Ling Yang Chieh. ANTELOPE HORN. RB, p. 25, from Mongolia and Kansu: FH, p. 197: JR, No. 212: Wa, 426: Annam, PH, p. 61: Wa, 426: PS, p. 17: CMC, 737 Manchuria, Chihli, Szechuan. Hupeh:

The best is very long with twenty-four branches, with a solid core. It is as potent as a thousand ox horns. It is not prescribed singly. It must be ground to the finest powder so as not to injure the intestines. (It is considered harder than a diamond, and is used for cutting them).

Saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

The shavings called 片 P'ien are the usual form upon the market, CMC, 738, they sell at Ch'i-chow for \$100 an oz. After having been partially calcined, they are sometimes ground to a powder, Wa.

It clarifies the vision, and benefits the vitality. It purifies the blood, and prevents nightmare. It dispels evil influences and cures frightful and delirious dreams. For typhoid, damp chills, and rheumatic fever. Taken regularly it is aphrodisiac to the male, lightening to the body and strengthening to the bones and muscles.

For arthritis, asthenic fevers, dysentery, and fainting spells. To cure infection and depression after childbirth. For convulsions in children, malaria. It quietens the liver and expels all poisons, and fevers. To dispel fullness in the chest, and colic. To quicken delivery. For erythema, and erysipelas.

肉. *Jou*. **ANTELOPE MEAT.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

For bad ulcers. For cramps in the muscles and bones. It is regularly eaten by northerners, but southerners only take it to prevent injury from snakes and insects.

肺. *Fei*. **LUNG OF THE ANTELOPE.**

For edema and ascites with retention of urine.

膽. *Tan*. **ANTELOPE BILE.**

Bitter, cooling, and nonpoisonous.

Applied for discoloration of the face, and warts on the face.

鼻. *Pi*. **NOSE OF THE ANTELOPE.**

The ash is given to cure devil possession.

363. 山羊. SHAN YANG. THE WILD SHEEP OR ARGALI. OVIS ARGALI, Pall.

Jih-Yung: ZN, 1824: Lydekker, I, 92: Linn. Syst. Nat. 1766, II, 97: BE, 56: G: ADS, II, 122: SC: Brooke, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1874, pp. 509-526: Ibid 425-7: Lydekker, Wild oxen, sheep and goats, 1898, p. 174, pl. XIV: RNH, II, 217: FH, 198 Peters, W. *Ovis jubata*, special bulletin, Berlin Acad. Mar. 1876:

Syn. 野羊 *Yeh Yang*, PT: 羴羊 *Yuan Yang*, PT: ZN: G, 13760: CP:

Syn. *Ovis ammon*: *Capra ammon*:

From Kansu and Sinkiang, like the Kiangsu sheep with large horns curving downward. It can climb the highest mountains. The horns are unlike the antelope, having wide and large grooves and are unsuitable for medicine.

Said to be as big as a cow. They fight together even to death. The horns are made into saddles. Li Shih Chen says there are two kinds differentiated by their horns. The one with big curved horns and weighing about 100 catties, the other has small thin horns called 羴羊 *Hsien Yang*. Other records say the wild sheep are as large as a donkey and shed their horns. In mid-summer earth and dew stick to the horns and grass is found growing thereon which the animal carries around.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The term *Shan Yang* commonly applies to goats (G, 12842). These are discussed in Chapter 50, see number 324. This clearly refers to wild sheep, which includes more than one species. According to Sowerby the common wild sheep of N. China across north Shansi and north Chihli was the *Ovis jubata* (G, 13706). *Ovis argali ammon* is in Mongolia, *O. poli* in the Western provinces, *O. hodgsoni* in Tibet, *O. littledalei* in the Altai. The Manchurian wild sheep is *O. nivicola*, ADS, p. 121. The length of the horn in the above species is between 52 and 75 inches, ADS.

肉. *Jou*. **ARGALI MUTTON.**

Sweet, heating, nonpoisonous.

It makes men fat and flably. It cures debilitating colds and uterine discharges, leucorrhoea etc. It cures muscular spasms. It strengthens a pregnant woman. It does not benefit people with epidemic disease. It increases virility.

364. 鹿. *LU*. **THE SIKA DEER. CERVUS SIKA**, Temm.

Shen-Nung, 2nd. group: Lydekker, IV, 107: Beddard, 291: UMST, p. 7: PS, 116: CP: ZN, 1404: ADS, II, p. 99: G, 7434: SC: ADS. Ann, Mag Nat. Hist., 1918, Ser. 9, II, 119-122: China J., 1923, I, 270: ADS. Annals & May Nat. Hist., 1918, IX, 2, July: Read, Pharm. J. 1926, 117, 672, Fig: Aoki, Annot Zool. Japan, 1913, VIII, 341: Heude, Mem. Hist. Nat. Emp. Chinois, 1888, II, 17: SK, p. 96: The stag was included in ancient Egyptian medicine, Papyrus Ebers, BC. 1500: BE. p. 51:

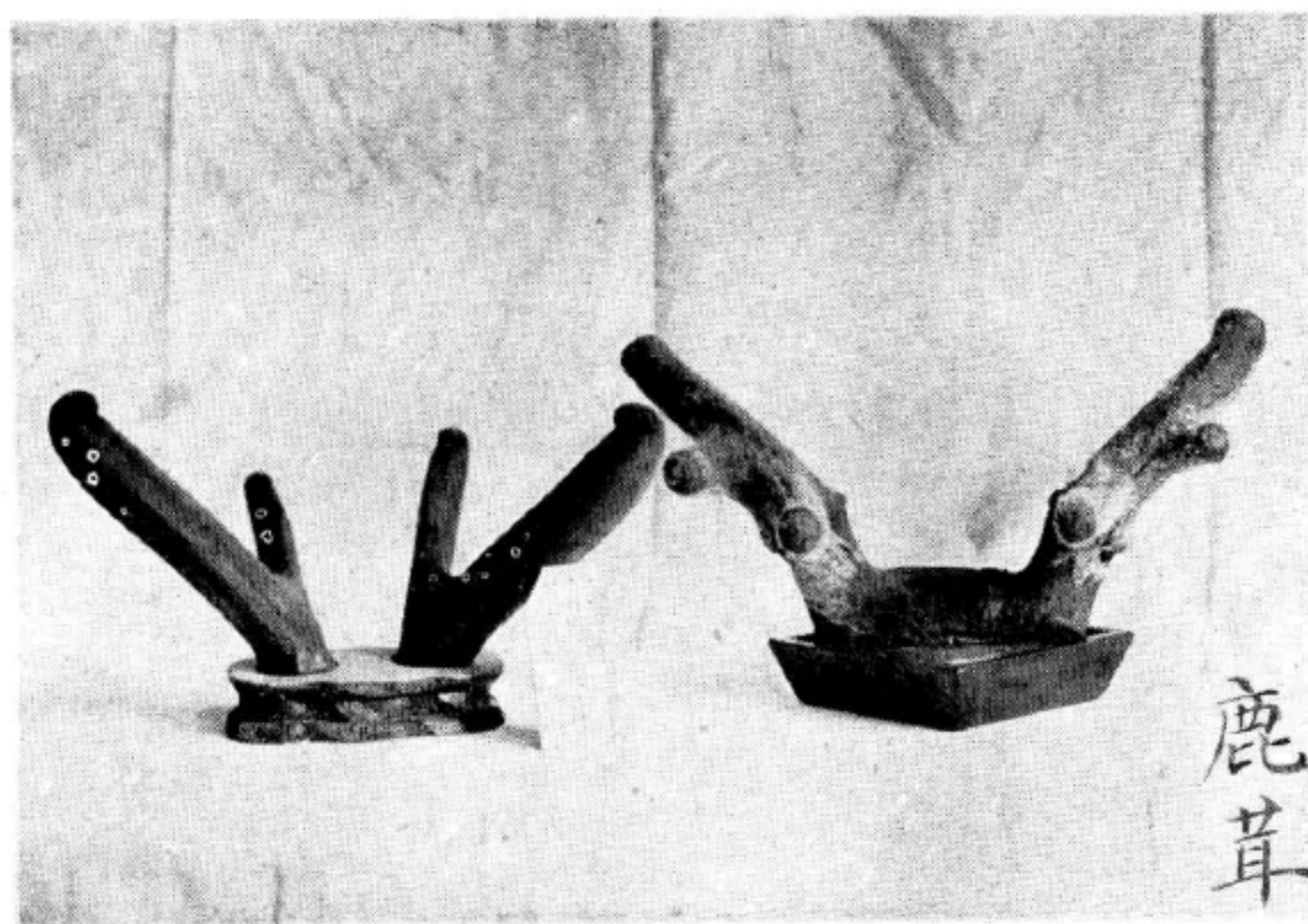
Syn. 斑龍 *Pan Lung*, PT.

Ideographic, symbolic of the horns, head, body and legs.

The male is called 麋 *Chia*, female is 鹿 *Yu* or 鹿 *Mi*. The big ones are termed 麋 *Chien*. The Sanskrit name is 密利迦羅 *Mi Li Chia Lo*.

Said to occur all over China in the mountain forests. Body like a horse, tail of a sheep, a flat long head, and long swift legs. The males have horns which are shed in late summer. Body is yellow with white spots. The doe is hornless and spotless, the hair is a mottled yellowish white colour. Gestation period 10 months. It is licentious one male serves many females. It likes to eat turtles and has a taste for good grass. They travel in flocks. When they are together they lie down in a ring with the head toward the periphery to keep track of their enemies. When sleeping, they put head to tail, breathing into the anus they sustain the posterior circulation 督脉 *Tu Mo*. (The same idea persists regarding the habits of the Peking swallow.) The tail of the deer is said to keep away flies and insects.

In summer the coat is reddish with numerous white spots, in winter it is greyish brown and unspotted. It is hunted assiduously when the horns are in velvet.



Deer Horn specimens,
\$320 per pair.



Sika Deer. *Cervus sika*.
Hsing Lung Shan, Chihli.

茸. *Jung*. **VELVET HORNS OF THE SIKA DEER.** G, 7434, 5736: FH, p. 131: CMC, 767, Chihli and Manchuria. Pieh-lu: SK, p. 96: PS, 116, the same important place in Chinese medicine as in all the old European pharmacopoeias: PH, p. 60: Wa, 416-427: JR, No. 230:

In the 4th and 5th moon (old calendar) when they are shed, they are collected and dried in the shade. They must be aired, sunned, and dried to keep them from getting musty and bad. Some roast them on the fire. The horns are placed in the exudate from *Polygonatum falcatum* for 2 days and nights, taken out, sliced, dried and powdered. This preparation prevents thirst. Another preparation is made by taking 5 ozs. of sliced horns smearing them with mutton fat 3 ozs. and then covering them with the powdered cranium of the animal warmed over a slow fire till it is yellow inside and out, wrapped in deer skin overnight, it is mature for use next morning when it is further baked and powdered. Some methods used to have butter fat in the place of mutton fat. The male serves many females till it is very thin. In the summer it eats *Acorus gramineus* (Flag root), and becomes very fat and when the horns are about to be shed the hunters catch and kill them before the blood at the horns is shed. It is hard to get them whole and with the blood in them which is said to contain the essence. Those as purple as an eggplant are considered best, 4 to 5 inches long and saddle shaped, the tips are like red agate and when broken like rotten wood. The horns of the elk (365) are quite different in use, being shed in winter they are used as a tonic to the 'Yang', ordinary deer horn is the opposite. Commercially a variety of products is recognized under the following names, see CMC, 767. *Lu Jung Lao* 鹿茸老 old deer horns, *Jung T'ou* 茸頭, or *Jung Tun* 茸整 the tips of young deer horns, *Jung Mo* 茸末 deer horn powder, *Lu Jung Nun* 鹿茸嫩 young deer horns. *Jung P'ien* 茸片 shavings of deer horn (old and young kinds). *Lu Jung Sui* 鹿茸碎 broken deer horn. Detailed descriptions of these products are given by Watson. It is of particular note that the terms young and old refer to the length of time during which a horn has been growing and has no connection with the age of the deer. There is a Siamese product on the Shanghai market, Chin. Econ. J., 1929, 4, 41:

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

It should not be smelt, because it contains a very irritant insect.

For vaginal bleeding, convulsions with feverish cold. It benefits the vitality and strengthens the mind. It assists the growth of permanent teeth. A good tonic for weak people. For arthritis, and backache. It is diuretic. For spermatorrhoea, hematuria, and to get rid of stagnant blood. For vesicular calculi, osteomyelitis. To quieten the placenta. For nymphomania, menorrhagia.

Aphrodisiac to the male, a marrow tonic, a blood food. A tonic to the male principle strengthening the muscles and bones, and a tonic to all kinds of weakness. Given for deafness, dimness of vision, vertigo and for weakening dysentery. For diarrhoea after alcohol.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

For leucorrhoea in the virgin. For pain in knees and back.

角. *Chieh*. **DEER HORN**. DH, 421: CMC, 759: RB, p. 25: SK, p. 96: KMN, 1081: PH, p. 60: Wa, 416: Cambodia—Norodom, Paris, 1926: WAC, London, 1677: Augsburg Pharmacopoeia A. D, 1613:

Collected in the 7th lunar month (July). Boiled to prepare 'deer glue'. The pointed yellow horns are best. They are cut up into inch sized pieces, and roasted over a charcoal fire. They are then pounded with water into a mash and reheated six times. The last time they are ground down with cows milk and roasted.

Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

For bad boils, and carbuncles. To expel blood clots in the vagina. For nymphomania (intercourse with devils) and spermatorrhoea. For kidney weakness with backache, and spinal pain. For weakness of the bones, with swollen face, inability to sit up, falling hair and decaying teeth, etc. For bleeding during pregnancy. To expel a dead foetus, and retained placenta and blood. For leucorrhoea. For pain in bones and joints, backache in women, lumbago, backache during pregnancy, abdominal pain after pregnancy, vomiting after meals, whooping cough, malaria, and vaginal discharges in children. For dribbling of children, face pimples and cold sores, for bruises from a fall, bones stuck in the throat. Applied to carbuncles in the early stage, and fatal breast abscess in the early stage. Taken for breast pain. Ashed and applied with calomel to foot ulcers. To expel a 'cat devil' which keeps the person from saying the word 'Kuei', (aphasia).

SUBHEADING. 白膠 *Pai Chiao*. **DEER GLUE**. RB, p. 25, Chihli, Honan, Yunnan,

Kansu: CMC, 758, and Manchuria: PS, 116: Wa, 417, 419: JR, No. 228:

Syn. 鹿角膠 *Lu Chieh Chiao*, 黃明膠 *Huang Ming Chiao*.

Powdered it is called 鹿角霜 *Lu Chiao Shuang*. DH, 422: CMC, 760, says it is the refuse from deer horn glue. The burnt horn powdered is sold under this name at Ch'ichow.

The horn is macerated in rice gruel for seven days to soften it, it is then washed for 7 days in swiftly running water to remove the coarse skin, after which it is boiled over a mulberry wood fire with water (easternly running) for seven days, stirring and adding water and a little vinegar. Spirit free from sediment is added and the whole is boiled down to a glue. Other methods described are very similar. (It is paler than asses glue, RB.)

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous. Incompatible with rhubarb.

Shen Nung:—Given for weakness from wounds, backache, emaciation, a general tonic, for sterility, a sedative to the placenta. Taken for a long time it lightens the body and shortens life.

Pieh-Lu:—For hematemesis, menorrhagia, pain in the extremities, excessive sweating, and fractured wounds.

Li Shih-Chen:—To fatten people and improve the complexion. For consumptive cough, hematuria, and semen in the urine.

P'u Chi Fang:—For night sweats and spermatorrhea. For enuresis. Aphrodisiac.

齒. *Ch'ih*. **TEETH OF THE SIKA DEER.**

For stagnant tumours, and pain in the heart and abdomen.

骨. *Ku*. **DEER BONE.** London Pharm. 17th. century, WAC:

Sweet, slightly heating, nonpoisonous.

The tincture is used to quieten the foetus. A bone tonic, and sedative.

Ashed it is given in water for dysentery in children.

肉. *Jou*. **VENISON.** JPK, p. 167:

It should not be eaten with shrimps, pheasant, etc.

Eaten from the ninth to the first lunar month. Taken at other times it produces colds, with pain. It is recommended for habitual use in Indian medicine, KMN:

A vitalizing tonic. A circulatory stimulant for weak people, giving strength and helping the growth of the viscera. It is applied to cold sores. a blood nutrient, given for post partum difficulties.

頭肉. *T'ou Jou*. **HEAD MEAT OF THE DEER.**

Bland.

For thirst, and nightmare. Good for making glue.

蹄肉. *T'i Jou*. **FLESH OF THE DEER'S FOOT.**

Bland.

For rheumatic pains in legs and knees with inability to stand.

脂. *Chih*. **DEER FAT.** FH, 200:

Applied to face pimples, carbuncles, and to the skin when the pores are over-dilated.

髓. *Sui*. **BONE-MARROW OF THE DEER.** London, 1677, WAC:

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

An aphrodisiac and an aid to conception.

For weakness of the lungs and for coughs. A circulatory stimulant and muscle tonic. Pieh Lu. For vomiting.

腦. *Nao*. **BRAIN OF THE DEER.**

Applied to the face for the complexion. Applied to remove thorns in the flesh.

精. *Ching*. **DEER'S SEMEN.**

Syn. 峻 Ch'üan.

A tonic for extreme general weakness.

血. *Hsieh*. **DEER'S BLOOD.** London Pharm. 17th. century: PH, p. 60:

For impotency. A tonic for weak people. For backache, nosebleed, fractured bones, and injuries from mad dogs. For weak lungs, hematemesis,

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

and leucorrhoea. An antidote to smallpox and poisonous drugs. A blood tonic. For neuralgic pain. For pleurisy, annamites, PH.

腎. *Shen*. **DEER'S KIDNEYS.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

A kidney tonic. A visceral stimulant. Aphrodisiac. For deafness associated with kidney weakness.

Some of the references come from the *Pieh Lu* which may have indicated the testes or *Wai Shen*. More likely it refers to the *deer's penis* which is a common article upon the market, 鹿鞭 *Lu Pien*, CMC, 771: SK, 105: London, 1677, WAC: Augsburg's Pharmacopoeia, 1613:

膽. *Tan*. **BILE OF THE DEER**

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

(The Cervinae have no gall-bladder, this must refer to material secured from the Moschinae, 367 & 369.)

For reducing swellings and dispelling poisons.

筋. *Chin*. **TENDONS OF THE DEER.** CMC, 761, Manchuria: S'hai. market, Chin. Econ., J. 1929. 4, 43:

For weakness. For extracting dirt and dust from the eye. Made into a kind of hard bougie it is used to extract bones stuck in the throat.

曆. *Yen*. **THE EPIGLOTTIS OF THE DEER.**

For swollen glands in the neck.

皮. *P'i*. **DEER SKIN.** UMST, p. 7:

Ashed and applied with lard five or six times daily for hemorrhoids.

糞. *Fen*. **DEER'S FECES.**

For hard labour. For sterility.

胎糞. *T'ai Fen*. **MECONIUM OF THE DEER.**

A general antidote to poisons. This is because it eats all kinds of medicinal plants. The Customs list 鹿胎 *Lu T'ai*, CMC, 773, *deer foetus*. also in Japan, SK, 105:

Heart of the Stag was in 17th. century London Pharmacopoeia.

365. 麋. *MI*. **ELK OR MOOSE. ALGES MACHLIS.**

Shen-Nung, 3rd. group: Beddard, 297: Lydekker, IV, 228: CP: VM, No. 49: G, 7826: SC=pig: ZN, 1408: ADS, II, 100, III: Lydekker, RNH, II, 377, fig: Lydekker, Deer of all lands, 1898, p. 49: Millais, British Mammals, 1906, 3, 8: WAC, 17th. century London Pharmacopoeia used the hoof: Brass, p. 55:

Male 麋 *Chiu* PT., G, 2294: F. 麋 *Ch'en*, PT., G. 657: young 麋 *Yao*.

Syn. *Cervus alces*, Linn. Syst. Nat. 1766, I, 92: *Alces alces*, Lydekker: The name Mi is said to come from the licentious character of the animal.

Habitat. Hills in the south and the Huai river region. They travel in flocks of 100 or 1,000, chiefly hornless females which can hardly be distinguished from the sika deer. The males shed their horns at the winter solstice, this fact with their love of marshes and rivers classes them as "Yin", in contrast with the sika which is classed as "Yang".

Of dark color, as big as a small cow, a fleshy hoof, two openings below the eyes are called "night eyes", seen by a pregnant women her offspring will have 4 eyes. The fertile character of the river land where they go to grass is so improved that it makes good farming land.

Live specimens in the Peiping Zoo.

The Manchurian subspecies is *A. machlis yakutakensis*, Millais, ADS., p III.

Giles gives *Cervus davidianus*, the tailed deer as the equivalent of "Mi", also VM.

麋脂. *Mi Chih.* **MOOSE FAT.** Shen-Nung.

Syn. 官脂 Kuan Chih.

The Pieh Lu says that it is obtained in the tenth lunar month but the Chou Li says that the moose should be sacrificed in the summer and the wolf in winter, this more truly corresponds with the properties of their respective meats, the tissues of the moose being warming.

Not to be given with peach or plum. It is bad to prescribe it with rhubarb.

After an elk has served more than ten females it dies and its fat enters the ground. Several years later the fat is recovered and called 道脂 Tao Chih.

For carbuncles, ulcers and acne. For necrosed tissue. For feverish colds, rheumatism, numbness of the extremities, swelling of the head and puffy skin. For a sensitive skin.

肉. *Jou.* **ELK MEAT.**

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

Taken in excess it is weakening sexually and it produces beri-beri. Eaten by pregnant women it will cause the offspring to have eye sickness. Eaten with pork or pheasant it will cause an incurable disease. With shrimps, fresh vegetable, or plums it weakens the semen.

A vitalizing tonic, strengthening the five viscera.

茸. *Jung.* **THE VELVET HORNS OF THE ELK.** VM.

Used just like the sika deer as a sexual stimulant, a blood tonic, and for muscular rheumatism of the back, knees and joints. They are usually larger than those of the sika.

麋角. *Mi Chiao.* **MOOSE ANTLERS.** WAC, London, 1677:

They have yellow fur at the base. They are used like deer horn for making deer glue etc.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

Sweet, heating, nonpoisonous. Unlike the flesh it is a strong tonic to the 'Yang'.

For rheumatism. A styptic. A tonic-increasing the semen, marrow, and blood. A stimulant to the circulation especially in the knees and back. Aphrodisiac. For pains in the joints and tendons. For angina pectoris. Rubbed to a paste with water and applied to the face, its cosmetic effect is like jade, and the complexion is most lovable, etc.

骨. *Ku*. **BONES OF THE MOOSE.**

An excellent tonic to fatten people and whiten the skin.

皮. *P'i*. **SKIN.**

For making shoes to get rid of beri-beri.

366. 雙頭鹿. SHUANG T'OU LU. THE TWO HEADED DEER. CERVUS SWINHOII.

Pen Ts'ao Shih-Yi:

Syn. 茶苜機 *Ts'ai Mao Chi (T'u Mu Chi)* PT, 余義 *Yü I*, PT: Shih-Yi.

From Yung Ch'ang Chün (Yunnan, Yung-Ch'angfu)

The meconium is obtained in the 4 month.

One head at each end of the animal, one grazes and the other directs the animal along its way.

Possibly it is the 四眼麋 *Ssu Yen Chang, Cervus swinhoii*, so named from the two spots near its eyes, G, 407: ZN, 1408:

胎中屎. *T'ai Chung Shih*. **MECONIUM.**

Syn. 耶希 *Yeh Hsi*.

Applied to foul ulcers and snake bites.

367. 麋. CHI. CHINESE DEER. MOSCHUS CHINENSIS, ZN.

Sung K'ai-Pao: G, 971: ZN, 2487: VM, it probably applies to *Hydropotes*.

Syn. 麋 *Chih*. Large animals termed 麋 *Ching* PT. G, 2141, ZN, 1407 = *Cervus unicolor*, Sanbur.

Smaller than a 麋 *Chang*. The male has short horns. Dark plum color, feet like a leopard but short and strong, agile. It frequents definite paths. The skin is fine, glossy and makes good shoes. It likes to eat snakes.

Reference is made to 銀麋 *Yin Chi*, a white species, and to 紅麋 *Hung Chi*, a red species.

A large species of deer from west China, said to have long tusks and feet like a dog, and fond of fighting, G, 971.

Also a small kind of fallow deer, G, 971.

肉. *Jou*. **VENISON.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

Cooked in vinegar of ginger and inserted for all kinds of piles. It is most effective.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku.* **CRANIAL BONES.**

Acrid, bland, nonpoisonous.

Ashed and given to spiritless patients.

皮. *P'i.* **DEER SKIN.**

For making shoes to keep out the damp and to get rid of rheumatism in the feet.

368. 麋 *CHANG.* **RIVER DEER. HYDROPOTES INERMIS,** Swinhoe.

Pieh Lu, second group: Beddard, 296: Lydekker, IV, 257: Horns and Hoofs 1893, p. 322: G, 407: ZN, 2496—*Moschus chinloo*: Pieh Lu—Lydekker, RNH, II, 383: Swinhoe, Proc. Zool. Soc. 1870, I, 89-92 plates; 1871, p. 258 & 702; 1872, p. 522; 1882, p. 636: Cornely, J., Bul. Soc. Zool. Acclim, 2nd Series IX, 1872, p. 791; 3rd series, IV, 1877, p. 417: UMST, p. 7: VM, No. 45: BE, p. 52:

Syn. 麋 *Chiin*, PT., G, 3299 = *Cervulus Reevesii*.

Common in the Yangtze Valley, G.

Winter and autumn they live in the mountains but in spring and summer they live in the marshes near the rivers. Smaller than the sika deer, hornless, dark yellow. (Beddard says the male has tusks.) The largest are only about 20 to 30 catties. The teeth of the male protrude from the mouth. The hide is softer and finer than the sika. Summer time the fur is shed and the skin is thicker than in winter when the fur is heavy. There is a white species said to appear when there is just government.

The bile is said to be white (white livered) the animal being frightened of its own shadow in the water. The Taoists say it is a "moose without a soul". Like all *Cervinae* it has no gall-bladder, but Garrod and Forbes both found the rudiments of one in the shape of a white ligamentous cord. Proc. Zool. Soc., 1877, p. 789; and 1882, p. 636.

Giles gives 麋子 as the roebuck, *Cervus pygargus*, of Chihli.

肉. *Jou.* **MEAT OF THE RIVER DEER.**

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

Eaten from the 8th to the 11th lunar month, mutton being eaten from 12th to the 7th month.

Not to be eaten with shrimps or plums.

Visceral tonic, a vitalizer improving the complexion. Carminative. A galactagogue. Taken to dissolve tumours.

髓腦. *Sui Nao.* **BRAIN OF THE RIVER DEER.**

To increase bodily strength, to improve the complexion, and for treating chills.

骨. *Ku*. **BONES OF THE RIVER DEER.**

Sweet, slightly warming, nonpoisonous.

For weakness due to spermatorrhoea. A tonic to the semen and marrow. Good for the complexion. For weakness after childbirth.

369. 麝. *SHE*. **THE MUSK DEER. MOSCHUS MOSCHIFERUS.**

Linn. (KASTURA)

Syn. 射父 *She Fu*; 香麝 *Hsiang Chang*, PT; 麝鹿 *Chang Pao*, G, 407: Sanscrit 莫訶伽婆 *Mo K'o Chia P'o*.

From Shen-Nung's Pen Ts'ao in the first class: G, 9794: ZN, 1172, 2478: ADS, II, 69; BE, 55: Fowler, W. H., Proc. Zool. Soc., 1875, pp. 159-190; 1876, pp. 182-8; 1877, pp. 287-292: Dauvergne M., Bul. Mus. Nat. Hist. 1898, IV, pp. 215-221: E. H. Parker, China Review, XIV, 217: Lydekker, IV, 4: Beddard, p. 299: Linn. Syst. Nat., 1766, I, 91: Milno-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat. Zool., 1874, Ser. 4, II, 119: Allen, Bull. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist., 1903, XIX, 129: Elliott, Cat. Mamm. Field Museum, 1907, VIII, 38: Aoki, Annot. Zool. Japan, 1913, VIII, 344: Lydekker, RNH, II, 396, figure: Von Mollendorff, No. 44:

The best musk is from the northwest mountains. The southeast is also used but it may be adulterated with civet. The animal is called 土麝 *T'u Chang*. It also comes from the western borderlands. (Tibet, Annam, C. India, PS.)

It is like the river deer in appearance but smaller, black and eats thuja leaves (柏) and snakes. The musk occurs in the skin of the lower abdomen in a special gland. It is fragrant in the 5th month. 彌香 *Mi Hsiang* is the name of the very fragrant material which is preserved in snake skin, which is said to potentiate its smell. In summer it eats many snakes and insects, the fragrant principle matures in the winter and in spring it secretes to the full and is very painful, so that the animal scratches the gland open and the secretion flows out. The animal covers it with its feces and urine regularly in one place. A man once found 15 pints which was better than that taken from the slaughtered animal. That from I-Chow is flat shaped. The genuine has 3 or 4 lobes with the blood and tissue scraped off. The adulterated has other material added and it is wrapped in the skin from the knees of the animal and the retailer again adds a spurious material. The hunters say that the genuine when cut open has hair inside. Plant and trees will not grow where it has dropped, and musk carriers who pass through orchards ruin the whole crop, and no fruit will appear.

生香 *Sheng Hsiang*, which is excreted from the animal is best.

臍香 *Ch'i Hsiang* is that obtained by slaughtering the animal.

心結香 *Hsin Chieh Hsiang* is the dried fragrant heart blood drawn from animals which have died in the chase or found dead from other causes. It is not used in medicine.

水麝 *Shui Shê* is the watery fluid sometimes found in the gland instead of the regular secretion. It is fragrant and imparts a lasting fragrance to clothes,

if it be mixed with water and sprinkled on them. The musk deer is jealous of mans obtaining the musk and if pursued too vigorously before yielding to it captors it will shed the contents of the gland on a high rock.

The Manchurian musk deer is the *M. sibericus*, Pallas, 1779 Spicil. Zool. XIII, 39, plates.

麝脐香. *Shé Ch'i Hsiang*. **MUSK**. RB, p. 36, Kwangsi, Yunnan. Hunan, Honan, Shansi, Kansu, Szechuan: JPK, p. 166: CMC, 529: SK, p. 96: PS, 159: CP: PH, p. 60: KMN, p. 1119, Hindu *Kasturi*, many used in Indian medicine: Wa, 464, 432, 466: Pharmaceutical J., 1930, **70**, 626-7. Chin. Economic J., 1930, March, pp. 270-279, B. T. Chang: Included in the Augsburg Pharmacopoeia, A. D. 1613: JR, No. 6:

It is the dried secretion of the preputial follicles.

Acrid, warming, nonpoisonous. Not eaten with garlic.

“Irregular, unctuous, light, dry, reddish or purple black grains, concreted in a slightly oval bag, about one and a half inches in diameter, hairy on one side only, weighing about 14 grams. Small, dark bags with the grayish hairs arranged evenly around the center are the best. Taste bitter and aromatic, smell penetrating and peculiar.”

It must not be inserted into the nose because there are white insects in it which can penetrate the brain and cause sickness. If constantly worn on the person it penetrates the body and causes a strange disease.

Shen-Nung It is a deodorant, destroying evil things and expelling poisonous parasites. For malaria, and convulsions. Prolonged treatment cures nightmare

For acute pain and swelling of the abdomen, for constipation, difficult labour. Abortifacient. For expelling a dead foetus. For snake and rat bite. An anthelmintic. For caries

Given to children who have convulsions, and for nervousness. For all kinds of boils with pus.

For restoring the lost sense of smell, and for opening up the functions of all the body orifices. For cataract. A circulatory stimulant benefitting the muscles and bones. Antivenomous. For tetanus. abnormal thirst, piles, purulent bronchitis. For tumor of the mouth. (Antispasmodic, Regnault).

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE MUSK DEER**. PS, 160:

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. After eating it one is immune from the poison of snake-bite.

For stoppage of the bowel, and constipation in children.

There are three main varieties of musk recognized in commerce.

1. **Chinese musk**, which is the best. This has three brands.

(a) *Szechuan brand*, which is a *Yunnan* product, more or less spherical and free from disagreeable odour.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

(b) *Shensi musk*, which is a *Kansu* product handled entirely by Shensi merchants.

(c) *Tongking musk*, the *Yunnan* musk which is exported to Europe through Cochin-China.

2. **Indian musk**, the article collected in the Western Himalayas and exported through India. It comes next to Chinese musk in quality.
3. **Karbardine musk**, the product from Outer Mongolia and Southern Siberia. (Kabarga is the name by which the animal is known in the Altai Mountains). This is inferior having a more ammoniacal odour.

A full grown buck yields about 2 ounces of musk. Musk is packed in hermetically sealed tins containing about three dozen or more pods, the whole weighing about ten cattie. The Chinese export trade is valued between £ 70,000 and £ 100,000.

It is extensively adulterated with all kinds of substance very difficult of detection even by experts who depend a great deal on the "touch". Watson and Mercator give several rough tests for the commoner adulterants. Sacs that have been opened or stitched indicate adulteration. Bematzik has published an account of the effect of various reagent upon musk, Amer. J. Pharmacy, 1861.

The United States Pharmacopoeia IX recognized a five per cent tincture, it was highly esteemed for its restorative power in nervous exhaustion, and for its antispasmodic action in hiccough. It was formerly official in the British Pharmacopoeia and the old European Formularies. Long monographs are still devoted to it in the British Pharmaceutical Codex and the United States Dispensatory.

370. 靈貓. LING MAO. THE CIVET. VIVERRA ZIBETHA, Linn.

Shih-Yi: ZN, 2583: SC: Beddard, p. 405: Lydekker, RNH, I, 451: USMT, p. 6: ZN, 2583=*V. civetta*, Schreb: Syst. Nat., 1766, I, 65: 1929, Amer. Mus. Nov. 359, p. 7: KMN, p. 1142: BE, 24, annual export 10,000 to 15,000:

Syn. 靈狸 Ling Li, 香狸 Hsiang Li, 神狸 Shen Li, PT: 狸麝 Li Shé, UMST: CP: 香貓 Hsiang Mao, CP: *V. ashtoni*, Swinhoe; *V. filchneri* Matschie.

Hermaphroditic.

In the mountains of Canton. It is like a cat. The secretion is like musk. It is scraped from the scrotum and removed with the whole of the external genitalia and is used to adulterate musk. The animal is said to have 4 testes.

肉. *Jou.* **FLESH OF THE CIVET.**

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. No uses are given.

陰. *Yin.* **CIVET GLANDS.** (Perineal.) KMN, 1142:

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. Odorous, brownish-yellow, fat like contents, properties similar to musk and castor).

For severe pain in the heart and abdomen. For madness, devil possession, and nightmare. It quietens the heart and mind.

Analyses, *Pharmaceutical J.*, 1897, p. 101.

For description and tests see, *U. S. Dispensatory*, 1926, p. 1258, "Civet" is highly prized as an article of Western perfumery, it has no place in modern medicine.

371. 貓. MAO. THE CAT. FELIS DOMESTICA, Briss.

蜀本草: G, 7676: Beddard, p. 390: Lydekker, *RNH*, I, 425: Papyrus Ebers, D. C., 1500: CP: Brass, p. 12:

Syn. 家狸 *Chia Li*, G, 6878, PT, CP: 烏圓 *Wu Yuan*, PT.

An onomatopoeic name. The character is said to originate from the crows which the cat is able to protect from the ravages of rodents. Yellow, black, white and tabby cats in China. Tiger faced. Soft hair and sharp teeth. Long tailed, short waisted, eyes bright. The roof of the mouth in good animals has many ridges. The eyes are chronometric. The nose is always cold except on the day of the summer solstice. It dislikes cold and is not afraid of the heat. It has geomantic power in looking for food. In eating mice and rats it follows the lunar calendar, eating down from the head during the first half of the lunar month, and eating upwards from the tail the last half of the month. The tiger has a similar habit. Gestation period is said to be 2 months. One litter has many kittens which the mother will often eat. When no males are about, a female cat can be made pregnant by brushing its back several times with a bamboo broom, or by covering up the cat on the kitchen stove with a rice dipper and appealing to the kitchen-god, this method is also used for chickens—there is no argument to these methods. Sick cats are best treated with *Cocculus laurifolia*, Wu Yao 烏藥. Mint is said to intoxicate cats. Dead cats attract bamboos shoots. A fox's eyes or a cat's head put in a rat run will drive the animals away.

肉. *Jou*. **CAT FLESH.**

Sweet-sour, warming, nonpoisonous.

Not as good as wild cat for food, but used in therapeutics to treat rat-bite swellings and ulcers, toxemia from worms, and fatigue. Swellings (buboes) were attributed to the poisonous saliva of rats (plague), hence a cat's head or a fox's eye was used to treat rat bits or diseases associated with rats.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **CAT'S CRANIUM.** Ashed. SK, p. 104:

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

Given for devil possession, toxemia from worms, and pain in the abdomen. It is anthelmintic. Used for swollen neck glands, black smallpox, and plague buboes and bad ulcers. For hysteria, asthma, toothache, and toxic boils on the mouth. Applied to genital sores in children and painful sores from rat-bite.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

腦 *Nao*. **BRAIN OF A CAT.** Spread on paper and dried in the shade.

For swollen neck glands. Applied with bastard anise to gangrenous plague buboes.

眼睛. *Yen Ching*. **CAT'S EYES.** Ashed and given with well water.

For scrofula, and malignant buboes.

牙. *Ya*. **CAT'S TEETH.**

For black smallpox in children in extremis. With the teeth of the human, dog, and pig, ashed and given with honey water. It drives the poison out of the kidney.

舌. *Shê*. **CAT'S TONGUE.** Dried in the sun and placed on scrofulous swellings and buboes.

涎. *Yen*. **CAT'S SALIVA.**

For scrofula. Cut open the swollen gland and spread cat's saliva over it.

肝. *Kan*. **LIVER,** of a *black* cat, dried and powdered.

Taken in wine at midnight on the 15th day of the month for tuberculosis and as an anthelmintic.

胞衣. *Pao Yi*. **CAT'S PLACENTA.**

Ashed and mixed with mercury sulphide. A little held under the tongue is very effective in stopping vomiting and nausea.

皮毛. *P'i Mao*. **HAIR ON THE BODY OF THE CAT.** UMST, p. 5: Papyrus Ebers: Brass, 50 Pf. a skin:

For scrofula, all kinds of sores and broken abscesses.

The hair on the lower abdomen is burnt, mixed with calomel and oil and applied to broken breast abscesses.

Ashed with the skin it is applied with flagroot and oil to buboes and swollen glands. The ash with musk is applied to rat-bite.

尿. *Sui*. **CAT'S URINE.** Obtained by rubbing ginger or garlic on the teeth or in the nose of the animal.

Dropped into the ear to expel insects.

屎. *Shih*. **CAT'S FECES.** Papyrus Ebers, B. C., 1500: JPK, p. 179:

Collected in the 12th lunar month, dried, mixed with mud and baked to a cake.

Applied to suppurating glands, smallpox scars, evil sores, and the poisonous bites of scorpions and rats.

Ashed it is given for typhoid, and malaria in children.

For bellyache due to toxemia from worms, and for a cough.

Applied with sputum to pain in the back and legs.

Applied with lard for alopecia.

372. 狸. LI. WILD CAT. FELIS CATUS, L.

A Pieh Lu medium class drug: G, 6878; SC, *Canis procyonoides* Schreg see 375: ZN, 2054: Beddard, p. 399: ADS, II, 37: Lydekker, RNH, I, 422, figure: Linn. Syst. Nat., 1758, I, 42: UMST, p. 5: VM, No. 10=*F. manul*, Pall.:

Syn. 野貓 *Yeh Mao*, PT: 猯 *Yeh*, PT.

A village (里 Li) animal hence called "Li". It tunnels the ground. A padded foot with a foot print of the nails. There are many kinds of wild cats. The tiger striped are best. Yellow and stinking. The flesh is used for goitre. It tastes like fox-meat. A kind called 牛尾狸 *Niu Wei Li* is pickled in the 11th moon in the south for food, also called 玉面狸 *Yü Mien Li*. It eats the fruit off trees. The species with a round head and big tail is called 貓狸 *Mao Li*, it steals chickens and ducks. It stinks and the flesh is inedible. Another kind striped like a tiger with a pointed head and square mouth, called a 虎狸 *Hu Li*, is fond of insects, rodents, and fruit, and the flesh is sweet and good to eat.

Another species has alternate black and white spots on the tail, 九節狸 *Chiu Chieh Li*, the skin is used for coat collars. These last two mentioned were presented to one of the Emperors of the Sung dynasty.

狢 *Hsün*, a kind of small cat which lives in the marshes and eats insects, rodents and grass roots. At Tengchow in Shantung there is species with a cat head and a fish tail. Unfortunately no name is given to this remarkable animal.

Other wild cats mentioned by Sowerby are the *F. microtis* Milne Edwards, called 'Teh Mao' BE, p. 11, of Shansi, Shensi, and north Chihli; also *F. euphilura* Elliott, of Chihli, Central China and Canton. *F. manul*, Pallas is also known as Li Tzu, ADS, II, 38.

肉. Jou. FLESH OF THE WILD CAT.

Sweet, bland, and nonpoisonous. Not to be eaten in the first moon. Incompatible with veratrum. When eaten the spine which is harmful to people should be removed.

For inguinal bubo, hemorrhoids, and anal fistula. For urticaria, and flatulence. A general tonic to the respiration and digestion.

膏. Kao. THE FAT OF THE WILD CAT.

Applied to ulcers resulting from mouse bite, the flesh of the wild cat being given internally.

肝. Kan. WILD CAT'S LIVER.

For malaria.

陰莖. Yin Ching. PENIS OF THE WILD CAT.

Ashed and given with water flowing from the east for impotency and irregular menstruation.

骨. *Ku.* **BONES OF THE WILD CAT.** Those of the head are best. Ashed.

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

For pain in the heart and abdomen. Anthelmintic and antiscrophulous. For swollen and painful glands. Applied to suppurating glands. For flatulence and indigestion. For malignant buboes, and toxic swellings. For hemorrhoids. For all kinds of nerve pain and devil possession. For toxemias causing extreme urticaria, etc.

屎. *Shih.* **FECES OF THE WILD CAT.**

Collected in the fifth moon and dried. Ashed and taken with water for malaria and feverish colds. The ash is mixed with wax and lard and applied to alopecia in children.

The bile 膽 *Tan* is used Japanese popular medicine, SK, p. 105.

373. 風狸. *Feng Li.* **THE SLOTH-MONKEY, LORIS SP.** G., W., (Syn. *Stenops*)

Shih-Yi: Beddard, p. 546; Lydekker, RNH, I, 229; G, 6878; W: ZN, p. 2324; ES:

Syn. 風母 *Feng Mu*, PT., 風生獸 *Feng Sheng Shou*, PT., 平猴 *P'ing Hou*, PT. 狌 狌 *Chi Ch'ii*, PT., W., G., 914.

It can travel with the wind. It is also used to cure "wind" diseases hence its name.

Like a rabbit only shorter. It lives at the top of tall trees. It lives on fruit. Its urine is like milk and hard to get hold of. From Canton and Szechuan western border forests. The size of a cat but shaped like a monkey. Red eyed. The tail is exceedingly small. Dark yellow or black. Spotted like a leopard. It eats spiders and frankincense. It sleeps in the day and flies at night like a bird. It is credited with extraordinary powers of insight and magical control of other animals.

It gets its name 'Feng Mu' from the trick of feigning death when hit, and of reviving by gasping for breath etc. W.

The sloth-monkey is also termed 懶猴 *Lan Hou.*, ZN.

"Feng Li" is given by E. S. as the Chihli Fox, *Vulpes tschiliensis*. Korean Repository Dec. 1898. This does not tally with the habitat given in the Pen Ts'ao.

The Indian Sloth-monkey is *L. tardigradus*. Beddard says the *Nycticebus tardigradus* is widely distributed in the East, occurring in Assam, Burmah, Siam and Cochin-China.

腦. *Nao.* **BRAIN OF THE SLOTH-MONKEY.**

Given with chrysanthemum flowers to promote growth, a tincture is made to treat rheumatic pain.

尿. *Sui.* **URINE OF THE SLOTH-MONKEY.**

For all kinds of "wind" diseases.

374. 狐 HU. FOX. CANIS VULGARIS, Gray (Vulpes japonicus). Many species.

In the Pieh Lu, third group. G, 4956: ZN, 3632: ADS, II, 43, *Vulpes vulpes*, L: Beddard, p. 419: Lydekker, RNH, I, 557, fig: Amer. Mus. Novit., 1929, 360, p. 7: CP: Brass, p. 17. *Vulpes vulpes*, L: (David applied the name *Canis houly* to the Szechuan animal, T. N. Ch. Br. R. As. Soc., 1873, p. 231.)

The name is said to be from 孤 Ku indicating its lonely habit. (Colloquial name is 狐狸 Hu Li, VM.)

All over China, chiefly in the north and Szechuan. Three types white, black and yellow. The white is very scarce, those with white spots on the tail are best. It is a night prowler with a cry like a child. It has a fetid smell. The skins make good clothes. The white side hair is called 狐白 Hu Pai. Said to be a spirit animal, often possessed by devils. It has three good points—its color is good, it is small in front and large behind and after death its spirit returns to its old home. It is very hard to trap—having a subtle knowledge of traps, it will not run into danger it is usually caught with nets. It has a keen ear for detecting dangerously thin crossings upon ice. It has seductive attractions. When it is 100 years old it worships the four stars of the Dipper desiring to become a man or woman in order to cheat people. By striking its tail on the ground it can generate fire. Fox brownies scare dogs. A 1,000 years old fox can only be seen by the light of a burning tree which has decayed. Rhinoceros horn put in a fox's hole will keep him from returning to it. If a fox sprite meets a man it crosses its hands or clasps them in proper recognition.

In Su Kung's time they were sometimes seen south of the Yangtze. Honan was the most abundant.

肉. *Jou.* **FOX MEAT.**

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous. (It is also reported to be slightly poisonous).

Taken for old chronic scabies, general weakness, Benefitting to the viscera, used for feverish colds. For hysteria and convulsions.

五臟及腸肚. *Wu Tsang Chi Ch'ang Tu.* **THE VISCERA, BOWELS, and STOMACH.** WAC. London, 1677:

Bitter, slightly cooling, poisonous.

For convulsions in children, feverish colds, and toxemia from worms. A general tonic for weakness. For purulent ulcers, scabies, and to expel fox demons. The ashed liver is given for convulsions, tetanus, and lockjaw. For malaria. For cattle-plague.

膽. *Tan.* **FOX BILE.** SK, 105:

Obtained in the twelfth moon.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

For malaria. An antidote to alcohol poisoning, preventing intoxication. For extreme collapse, prostrated without strength nigh to death.

陰莖 *Yin Ching*. **FOX PENIS.**

Sweet, slightly cooling, poisonous.

For prolapse of the uterus, swollen penis in children, pruritus of the vagina, for spasms of pain of the penis in children, swollen testes, for delayed delivery.

頭. *T'ou*. **FOX'S HEAD.** Ashed.

Applied with the ashed head of the wild cat to swollen glands.

目. *Mu*. **EYE OF THE FOX.** Dried, roasted and powdered.

For tetanus.

鼻. *Pi*. **NOSE OF THE FOX.**

Boiled with the nose of the leopard and given to expel fox demons. (Hysteria, SC.)

唇. *Ch'un*. **LIPS OF THE FOX.**

Applied to suppurating sores caused by septic splinters entering the flesh.

涎液. *Yen Yeh*. **SALIVA OF THE FOX.**

Added to aphrodisiac medicines.

四足. *Ssu Tsu*. **FEET OF THE FOX.**

For bleeding piles. Mixed with other drugs it is ashed and taken with wine.

皮. *P'i*. **SKIN OF THE FOX.** RB, p. 80: UMST, p. 11, 8 different species:

To expel evil spirits.

尾. *Wei*. **TAIL OF THE FOX.** UMST, p. 12:

The ash is used as a talisman. With the head ash it is used for cattle-plague.

雄狐屎. *Hsiung Hu Shih*. **FECES OF THE MALE FOX.**

For malaria in pills with bat dung and vinegar. The dried powder was given internally to cure necrotic sores. The ash was a talisman, Pieh Lu. It could expel the plague. For curing hepatic disorders associated with pain and sallow countenance (a deadly gray), and for asthmatic breathing.

Applied with the lard to wounds from septic splinters.

The Tongue 舌 *She* is used in popular Japanese medicine for colds, SK, 105:

The Lungs were used in London, 1677, WAC:

375. 貉. HE. RACCOON DOG. NYCTEREUTES PROCYONIDES, Gray.

Yen-Yi under the, Tuan No. 376: Beddard, 415, Fig. 206: Lydekker, RNH, I, 555, fig.: ADS, II p. 46: VM, No 15: G, 3973, SC, UMST, p. 30, skins are called 樹貂 Shu Tiao: ZN gives the Chinese name 狸 Li for the racoon, 1042: Racoon CP=樹狸: Amer. Mus. Novit., 1929, 350, p. 5: Illustr: Indian Zool. 1924, II, Pl. 1.

Syn. *Canis procyonides*, Gray. (Yangtze name, 果子狸 Kuo Tzu Li, South China name 窩狐 Wo Hu, Von Mollendorff.) Brass, p. 21, three species:

Formerly classed with the badger, now described separately. It is said to live with the badger in the same den, each in his own (各) part.

The Shuo Wen called it 獬 Chou, the Erh Ya a 貂 Mo.

It is like a small, yellowish brown fox. Found in the wild mountains, like a wild cat. A pointed head and nose, striped thick hair, warm and smooth making good clothes. A nocturnal animal, the badger accompanying it on its travels. It is fond of sleep, so that a sluggard in Chinese is nicknamed a racoon dog. When people waken it by striking with a bamboo it soon falls off to sleep again. Other reports say it is deaf and is easily overtaken in sleep, if it sees a man coming it flees. If it travels south of the city Wen (Anhui) it will die on account of the climate. Li Shih-Chen contradicts the old fallacy of the Hsing Chin Shu which says that a racoon-dog is the metamorphosis of a 1,000 year old fox.

肉. Jou. MEAT OF THE RACCOON DOG.

Sweet, warming, nonpoisonous.

For constitutional weakness and exhaustion in women.

376. 獬. T'UAN. CHINESE BADGER. MELES CHINENSIS, Gray.

(*M. leptorhynchus*, M-E).

T'ang Pen Ts'ao. G, 12139, Tuan: SC: VM, p. 52, No. 17: W: M. E. p. 190: J. E. Gray, Zool. Soc. Proc., 1868, 206/209: 1870, p. 621: Lydekker, RNH, II, 86: UMST, p. 4. plate: Swinhoe, p. 622: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47. 79, three species N. China:

Syn. 獬 Huan T'un, PT: 豬獬 Chu Huan, PT, G, 5052: VM, *M. leptorhynchus*, Edw.; Brass, p. 35:

The body is round "T'uan" and fat.

Erh Ya name for the young is 獬 Lu. The foot is fleshy and the footprint is like a hand with fingers.

Like a short-legged dog, pointed nose, black feet, brown fur. Apart from size the Huan, He and T'uan are about the same. A fat animal slightly brownish grey with a black stripe down the spine. Short tailed. Black nosed. Boiled badger is a good dish.

Common in caves or holes of all mountainous areas. It travels very slowly and is deaf, but will run away from man if it sees him. It burrows and

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

lives on cucurbits, insects, ants and fruits. It has an earthy smell. The fur is not as good as that of the ordinary badger the "Huan".

Small badger of Shansi, G.

肉. **Jou. FLESH OF THE BADGER.**

Sour-sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

For old standing, wellnigh fatal, edemas, a powerful diuretic. It is the best meat of a wild animal for fattening emaciated people. For chronic dysentery (both white and red), dyspnea and weakening cough.

The appendix of the Pen Ts'ao includes 獾油 *T'uan Yu*, Badger oil.

膏. **Kao. FAT OF THE BADGER.** VM. Peking markets;

Given with wine for blood in the sputum, and for difficult respiration, with choking as if blocked by worms. For toxemia from worms.

胞. **Pao. PLACENTA OF THE BADGER, SC.**

Pao also means the bladder, G.

Dried in the twelfth moon, made up with hot water into balls the size of hens eggs and given on an empty stomach for toxemia from worms.

骨. **Ku. BONES OF THE BADGER.**

Ground up and given with wine for a cough.

377. 獾. HUAN. THE COMMON BADGER. MELES ANAKUMA,
Temm.

Shih-Wu; G., 5052; ADS, II, p. 72; ZN, 2597; Lydekker, RNH, I, 86, figure: UMST, p. 2. Chihli, Kansu, Shansi, Szechuan, Amoy: CP: VM, No. 18, *M. leucolaemus*, M. Edwards, p. 195; Brass. p. 36:

Syn. 狗獾 *Kou Huan*, PT, G; 天獾 *T'ien Huan*, PT; 猪獾 *Chu Huan*, G.

Like a fat clumsy dog. Szechuan people call it the heavenly dog 天狗 *T'ien Kou*. There are several varieties.

A burrowing animal found wild in all the mountains of China. Shaped like the domestic dog with short legs and pointed snout. It is vegetarian. It is good to eat. The skin makes good clothes. Short tail, bushy brown hair. In Manchuria there is a 海獾 *Hai Huan*, the fur of which is used. (This must refer to the *Meles amurensis*, Schrenk, ADS.)

肉. **Jou. FLESH OF THE BADGER.**

Sour-sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

A gastric stimulant and vitalizer. Anthelmintic. For toxemia with emaciation.

London Pharm. 17th century contained 'badger blood'.

378. 木狗. MU KOU. SILVER FOX. CANIS ARGENTATUS.

Kang Mu: G, 6141—a racoon like animal: W: ZN: CP—the sloth:

Syn. 玄狐 *Hsian Hu*, ZN, 286:

A Cantonese animal. It occurs in the hills on both sides of the river. It is like a black dog which can climb trees. Coats and mattresses made from its skin improve the circulation.

Another type is mentioned as coming from Szechuan called 玄豹 *Hsüan Pao*.

A climbing animal resembling the racoon, G.

皮. *P'i*. **THE SKIN.**

For gout, and rheumatism. To improve the circulation and bring warmth to the back and knees.

379. 豺. CH'AI. THE CHAI WOLF. CANIS LUPUS TCHILIENSIS,
Matsch., ADS., (*Canis hodophilax*, Temm., ZN.) (*C. lupus laniger*,
Hodgson).

T'ang Pen Ts'ao: ADS, II, 45: ZN, 1143; G, 265: ES: SC: Beddard, p. 418, fig. 209: Amer. Mus. Novitates, 1929, 360, p. 4: Calcutta Jour. Nat. Hist., 1847, Vol. 7, p. 474: UMST, p. 39, 4 species: VM, No. 12, *C. rutilus*, Pall: Brass, p. 13:

Syn. 豺狗 *Ch'ai Kou*, PT: G: ADS, 45:

It is said to be named *Ch'ai* because it has intelligence, knowing and practising the rites of sacrifice of its victims to heaven. The Pi Yah says it is because it is "as thin as a stick (lathe)". Thin people are compared to the *Ch'ai*.

It is a kind of wolf found in the mountains of all parts. Like a dog, whitish in colour. Short in front, tall behind. Long tailed. Very slim body. Fierce. Yellowish brown fur. Wild looking. Teeth like awls, carnivorous. Tigers fear them when they travel in packs. It is very fond of mutton. It makes a noise like a dog. Men fear them because they can bring demons. It has a stinking odor. The dog is said to be its maternal uncle, when they meet, it bows to the dog, and the dog can control it.

The *Ch'ai Kou* is also said to be the *C. familiaris chinensis*, ZN. Giles and Williams both state it to be a jackal. Sowerby says a "*Ch'ai*" is a wild dog, in Kirin it is the *Cyon alpinus*, Pallus, (syn. *Canis alpinus*)

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE CH'AI WOLF.**

Acid, heating, poisonous.

Debilitating, and emaciating.

皮. *P'i*. **SKIN OF THE CH'AI WOLF.**

Heating.

The soup is good for dysentery and ulcerated bowels. Ashed it is also given, and the ash is applied to gumboils. With the bones from wolf's feces it is ashed and given when everything else has failed for night crying in children. It is wrapped around gouty feet and beri-beri patients.

380. 狼. LANG. WOLF. CANIS LUPUS, L.

Shih Yi: G, 6764: W: SC: ZN, 1043: ADS, II, 42: Syst. Nat., 1766, I, 58:
CP: Beddard, p. 420, fig. 210: VM, No. 11: Brass. p. 14:

Syn. 毛狗 *Mao Kou*, PT.

The name is said to come from its fine intelligence 良, it can divine the path of its victims. The Erh Ya gets this confused with the badger, saying that the male is termed 獾 *Huan*. It is as large as a dark colored dog. When it howls, all its body orifices especially the anus reverberates.

It is universal in China. In the north people like to eat it. It has a pointed head with a sharp nose. White cheeks, ribs joined together, tall in front and broad behind and short. It eats chickens, ducks, rats etc. It is variegated yellow black, also some are dark grey. It can regulate its voice, by imitating the cry of a child it can fool people. The people in wild hamlets fear its howl in winter. The bowels are straight, so that when it howls the anus expels gas. Its dung was used on the beacon fires, because its smoke rises straight up and can be seen from a distance. It constantly looks behind. It is very greedy and destructive. When old its neck droops and the tail lags and it finds it hard to travel either backwards or forwards. Its fortune follows the planet Venus.

An animal called the 猓 *Pei*, G, 8796 (probably the jerboa, W.) is said to be a short wolf with a canny knowledge of the whereabouts of food, so the big wolf carries it on his back. Hence the term 狼狽=fellows in crime.

Sowerby says that the wolf is common in Manchuria, but in north China down to the Yangtze one finds the *Ch'ai*, 379, of frequent occurrence in Chihli, VM.

狼筋. Lang Chin. TENDONS OF THE WOLF.

Unusually large. Used as a protection against robbers. When burnt the fumes cause cramp in the feet (i. e. the robbers are then easily caught).

肉. Jou. FLESH OF THE WOLF.

Saline, heating, nonpoisonous. Stronger flavour than dog or fox meat.

A tonic to the viscera, thickening the wall of the bowels and stomach, stimulating the bone marrow, relieving cold in the abdomen, etc.

膏. Kao. WOLF FAT. London Pharm. 17th. century.

According to the "Chou Li", the wolf was sacrificed in winter, the fat being first removed. Hence the prescriptions ordered for use, fat that had been obtained in the twelfth moon, purified and stored. Strengthening and vitalizing. Emollient to the skin, healing to all kinds of purulent ulcers.

牙. Ya. TEETH OF THE WOLF.

Worn as a talisman. Powdered it is given with water for dog bite. Ashed it is given for beef poisoning.

喉麗. *Hou Yen.* **EPIGLOTTIS OF THE WOLF.**

Sundried and powdered. Half a drachm mixed in the food will cure hiccough.

皮. *P'i.* **WOLF SKIN.**

Worn as a talisman.

尾. *Wei.* **WOLF'S TAIL.**

Tied on a horse's chest it keeps the animal from freight.

屎. *Shih.* **WOLF'S FECES.** London Pharm. 17th. century: SK, p. 95:

Ashed and applied with oil to swollen glands. The ash is given with water to remove bones stuck in the throat.

屎中骨. *Shih Chung Ku.* **BONES IN FECES OF THE WOLF.**

The ash in water will cure a baby's crying in the night. As a cure for alcoholism. Roasted it is given with mulberry flowers and cicada skin for tetanus. If the patient's mouth be dry this remedy will not cure.

The London Pharmacopoeia also contained the intestines and liver of the wolf.

The Mongols also use the tongue and the stomach, FH, p. 198.

381. 兔. T'U. HARE. LEPUS TIMIDUS, L. and other species.

Pieh Lu, second group: G, 12122: W: ZN, 521: ADS, II, 170-178: CP: Beddard, p. 504: Lydekker, RNH, III, 195: Amer. Mus Novit. 1927, 284, p. 6-8: Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist., 1894, (6) XIII, 364: UMST, p. 14: SK, p. 95, *L. brachyurus*, Temm.: Annam. PH, p. 67: VM, No. 26, *L. tolai*, Pall: Pharmacopoeia Augustana, 1613: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 82, eight species: BE, p. 57:

Syn. 明眈 Ming Shih.

The character T'u is a generic term for the *Lepus* species. There is no clear indication as whether it refers to hares or rabbits. The varying hare *L. timidus*, and the Manchurian hare are common in the north.

Originally the character was pictorial, representing a rabbit. The statement that it is called a T'u Tzu because its young at birth are vomited from the mouth of the mother is most preposterous because rabbits under no circumstances vomit. The name 明眈 Ming Shih from the Li Chi is said to refer to their not blinking (they wink) and their keen vision. The young are called 媿 Wan. The Sanscrit name is 舍迦 She Chia.

They are common all over China, and make first class food. They are as large as a wild cat with a dark grey fur. Shaped like a rat, short tailed, large pointed ears. The upper lip is divided. There is no spleen. The whiskers are long, front legs short, and there are nine orifices in the anal region. It can squat and it can race quickly. Licking the hair of the male will cause the female to become pregnant. Gestation is 5 months. A large animal

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

(the hare) is called a 兔 Cho, darker in color, the head is like a rabbit but the feet are like the deer. Other says there are no males but pregnancy occurs in the autumn by the female looking at the moon, Li Shih-chen corrects this erroneous statement for the males have two testes and run very quickly, and the females are known to have poorer vision. In times of flood rabbits turn into turtles, and in drought the reverse is the case. Occasionally in pregnancy on the left side there is formed a ringlet womb and the animal's hair becomes very beautifully striped. After 50 years the ringlet passes to the brain and the animal obtains a magic vanishing power. Pregnant women must not eat rabbit meat, it will cause hare lip in the offspring and cause delivery of the child through the mouth instead of through the vagina.

肉. *Jou.* **RABBIT MEAT.**

Acrid but bland, nonpoisonous.

Eaten without the rump it is not beneficial. Eaten by pregnant women the offspring will have hare lip. Eaten with white chicken meat, and with the heart and liver it will cause the face to become jaundiced. With otter meat it will cause sickness. Taken with ginger and orange it causes cholera and heart pain, and it must not be eaten with mustard. Eaten constantly it is devitalizing, weakening to the circulation, causing paralysis. It is satisfactory if eaten from the eighth to the tenth moon, at other times it is harmful to people. Meat from an animal which has died of its own accord taken with the eyes is fatal.

Given for extreme thirst and emaciation (diabetes). For rheumatism. Strengthening to the spleen. Cooling to the blood, relieving toxic fevers and increasing peristalsis. An antidote to mercury sulphide poisoning. Made into sauce in the twelfth moon it is given to children to cure boils.

血. *Hsieh.* **RABBIT BLOOD.**

Saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

A blood cooler and circulatory stimulant. For difficult labour and toxic fevers from the placenta. Taken with powdered tea and olibanum for angina pectoris.

腦. *Nao.* **RABBIT BRAIN.** FH, p. 201: Annam, PH, p. 67:

Applied to chilblains. Given with the marrow for deafness, and for difficult labour or to hasten parturition. Applied to cracks on the hands and feet, and boils on the head or back. By Mongols for colic, PH.

骨. *Ku.* **RABBIT BONE.** Annam, PH, p. 68:

Made into broth it is given to relieve the thirst of fevers. It was also recommended for thirst with emaciation and constant urination, (diabetes).

The broth is also given for cholera, and vomiting with diarrhoea.

It is ground up with vinegar and applied to chronic scabies and ulcers.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **CRANIUM OF THE RABBIT.** Annam, PH, p. 68:

Sour-sweet, mild, nonpoisonous.

For vertigo, headache and delirium.

It is ashed with the skin and given for incessant vomiting of epidemic origin, and to expel the placenta and retained blood at childbirth. The ash is applied to prolapse of the uterus occurring after childbirth, and to ulcers. Given internally for dysentery in children. The broth is given for incessant thirst, also for the treatment of smallpox, and for colic after childbirth.

肝. *Kan*. **RABBIT LIVER.** Annam, PH. p. 68:

To clear the vision, for vertigo, and as a tonic. It can purge the liver and improve the vision. When the eyes are weak and inflamed due to weakness of the kidneys and liver, they are relieved by gruel made of rabbit liver, rice, etc. For cataract, PH.

皮毛. *P'i Mao*. **RABBIT SKIN AND FUR.** RB, p. 79: UMST, p. 14, 13 species:

Annam. PH, p. 67: Wa, 18:

Prepared in the twelfth moon.

Ashed and given with wine for difficult labour, for unexpelled placenta, and for the stabbing heart pain associated with retained blood and severe conditions after childbirth.

The broth is used to wash smallpox sores.

The skin from the head is ashed and used for plague buboes, and sharp pains under the skin. The fur ashed is used for inflamed sores that will not heal. (The fur was used as a styptic in old Arabic medicine, Avicenna).

The skin ashed is given with wine for leucorrhoea. The ashed fur is diuretic. The fur from the belly is applied to injuries from burns, when the hair falls out the wound will be healed.

屎. *Shih*. **RABBIT'S FECES.** FH, p. 204, a Mongol remedy: CMC, 1567; Fukien,

Kwangtung: SK, p. 95: Annam, PH, p. 68:

Collected in the twelfth moon.

Syn. 明月砂 *Ming Yüeh Sha*, 翫月砂 *Hsi Yüeh Sha*, 兔糞 *T'u Hsin*, PT.

For clearing the eyesight and removing false membranes over the eye. Anthelmintic. As an antidote to poisons. For anal fistula, tuberculosis, venereal sores (G), and the five groups of internal and external ulcers. With one frog ashed, wrapped in cotton and used as a suppository for 'Kan' diarrhoea (sprue), applied to the navel for constipation and anuria.

For ulceration of the external ear. Taken internally to safeguard the eyes during smallpox, and to cure fleshy growths over the eyes after smallpox, and cataract.

Gall of the hare was in the 17th. century London Pharmacopoeia.

382. 敗筆. PAI PI. RABBIT HAIR FROM OLD BRUSHES.

T'ang Pen Ts'ao.

The ancient writings on bamboo strips were done with brush-pens made of rabbit hair. The bamboo was heated to make its surface sweat and easy to write on, at the same time it was sterilized and made free from attack by worms in the grain. Later rat hair, and goat hair was used. Today goat and wolf hair is used, but none of these are suitable for medicine in place of this particular remedy. The old pen top is ashed. It is recognized that the dried ink is largely responsible for its action, being said to be diuretic and of value in delivery.

Slightly cooling, nonpoisonous.

The ash is given for urine retention, difficult urination, swollen penis, prolapse of rectum with infected tissue. For impotency. For difficult labour. For sorethroat and angina pectoris.

383. 山獺. SHAN T'A. CHINESE OTTER. LUTRA LUTRA CHINENSIS, Gray.

Kang Mu: W.=the fresh water otter: G, 10530=the beaver: SC, mountain otter. Mag. Nat. Hist., 1837, Vol. I, 580: Amer. Mus. Novit., 1929, 358, p. 12: CP, land otter: BE, 32:

From Kwangsi, Ichou. 插翹 Ch'a Ch'iao is a local name.

It is an evil and most lusty animal. In any mountain where this animal lives the females of all other animals go away. In hunting for them women in spring go into the wilds in groups and the otter getting their scent jump upon them and cannot be removed except by throttling them to death. The penis of such an animal is considered very valuable. The penis of an animal found dead clinging to a tree trunk is most costly.

陰莖. Ying Ching. PENIS OF THE OTTER.

Sweet, heating, nonpoisonous.

For sexual impotence. Aphrodisiac.

骨. Ku BONES OF THE OTTER.

Ground to a powder and applied to wounds from arrow poison (aconite).

384. 水獺. SHUI T'A. FRESH WATER OTTER. LUTRA LUTRA, L.

Pieh Lu in the third group: G, 10530: ADS, II, p. 72: VM, No. 19: SC, *L. vulgaris*: ZN, 210: Beddard, p. 441: Lydekker, RNH, II, 91, fig: CP: Linnaeus, Syst. Nat. Hist., 1766., X, 66: Brass, p. 33:

Syn. 水狗 Shui Kou.

It lives on fish, which it regularly lays out for sacrifice to heaven in the 1st and 10th moon. Its name comes from a dog which it resembles in shape, and "Lei" meaning dependent for it does not make great effort to find food, but lives on the multitude of fish always to be found in the

rivers. The 獾 獺 Pin T'a is described as a large animal having a horselike neck and a body like a bat, and unsuitable as medicine. Williams says it probably denotes different sexes or ages of the common otter. Li Shih Chen says that it is always male, and that it cohabitates with the gibbon 獾.

The feet are all short. The head, body, and tail are flattish, and have a faded purple color. From head to tail it is more than 3 feet long. It lives in the water and in trees. The western tribes use its skin for making dress collars, cuffs etc. because dirt does not stick to it, and if dirt gets into the eyes it can be wiped out easily with this fur. It is shaped like a small dark fox. The dark fur is like a dogs, but the skin is like bat skin. It has an instinct and foreknowledge of the weather, by the height of its hole the farmer can foretell floods and droughts. Just as the nest of a magpie indicates the direction of a coming wind storm. There is a motto, "If a bear eats salt it will die, if an otter drinks wine it will expire". Szechuan people sometimes on the fishing boats fish otters. A white species is known. (This probably refers to the south China otter, *Lutra cinerea*, Ill. ADS, p. 72.)

肉 *Jou.* **MEAT OF THE OTTER.**

Saline sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Must not be eaten with rabbit meat.

The broth is used to treat fevers and epidemic diseases of men, horses and cattle. For ascites, osteomyelitis, circulatory stasis, amenorrhoea, for lack of virility in the male and constipation.

Charred and powdered it is made into a mush with millet and applied to fractures to stop pain.

肝. *Kan.* **OTTER'S LIVER.** FH, p. 197: JPK, p. 179:

Sweet, warming, poisonous.

It is said to have a number of lobes corresponding exactly to the number of the month, in the first lunar month there is one lobe, in the twelfth month there should be twelve lobes, spurious samples should not be used.

Ashed it is given for chronic coughs, malaria, and all kinds of possession by devils etc. For general weakness, debilitating sweats, nervousness, and weakness after childbirth. For anal fistula, and hemorrhages. Given by the Mongols for retention of urine, FH.

腎. *Shen.* **OTTER'S KIDNEYS.**

Beneficial to the male.

膽. *Tan.* **OTTER BILE.**

Bitter, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Dropped into the eye to remove filmy growths, and to improve the eyesight, and to cure floating specks in the vision. Internally for amenorrhoea.

髓. *Sui.* **MARROW OF THE OTTER.**

Mixed with jade and amber to remove scars

骨. *Ku*. **OTTER BONES.**

The soup is good for incessant vomiting, and to remove hard fish bones stuck in the gullet.

足. *Tsu*. **OTTER'S FEET.**

For cracked hands and feet. Crushed and taken with wine for tuberculosis.

皮毛. *P'i Mao*. **THE SKIN AND FUR OF THE OTTER.** RB, p. 82: UMST, p. 27,

Yangtze Valley animal is the *L. swinhoei*: BE, 15 to 20 marks each:

Carried by the midwife to ease labour.

The decoction given for dropsy.

屎. *Shih*. **OTTER FECES.**

For dysentery. Applied to carbuncles it extracts the pus and relieves the pain.

It is given to cure infectious plagues among cattle, horses, donkeys etc.

385. 海獺. HAI T'A. SEA OTTER. ENHYDRIS MARINA, Schreb.

Shih-Yi: ADS, p. 74: G, 10530: ZN, 1017: Beddard, p. 439: Lydekker, RNH, II, 98, fig.: CP: VM, No. 19, from Saghalien: Brass, p. 34:

Syn. *Latax lutris*, L.: Lydekker, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1895, p. 421: 1896, p. 235:

It lives in the sea, as large as a dog with webfeet. The fur is waterproof. During a storm it waits on the shore with a dry skin. The large varieties weigh 50 to 60 catties, and is also referred to as 獺 Pin. The skins are used to keep out the wind and the damp.

386. 腴肫獸. WU NA SHOU. THE BEAVER. CASTOR FIBER, L.

Sung K'ai Pao: Lydekker, RNH, III, 95: PS, 200: CP: F. E. Beddard, X, 467:

Syn. *Otaria ursina*, ADS, p. 80: G, 12734:

骨納 *Ku Na* or *Ku No*, PT:

The old names which varied from *Wu Na* to *Wu Cho* were transliterations of the Turkestan. Apparently the early skin trade came through N. W. Turkestan. In the T'ang dynasty it was said to come from Yingchow in Western Manchuria and from Turkestan. The I T'ung Chih says that it occurs in Kirin.

The animal is described as being like a fox, long legs like a dog, it has a flying movement. The tail is like a fish. The animal described in the I Wu Chih coming from Korea is said to be like a cat, dark black in colour, no forefeet, and is a ratcatcher.

The Turkestan name is 阿慈勃他你 *Ah T'zu Po T'a Ni*. Larger than a fox, with a long tail. The testes are said to be like musk or rotted bone, a reddish yellow colour. Another writer refers to animals caught in the seas south of Siam.

Li Shih-Chen says there must be two kinds of animals referred to in old literature, land and sea types.

The Eastern Sea animal is described like a deer, with a doglike head, and long tailed. It daily comes out to swim in the sun. The natives kill them with arrows and remove the testes, which after drying in the shade for 100 days are very fragrant and sweet.

The Tsangchow drawing shows a fish with 2 feet and a pig's head. Often adulterated with 水烏龍 *Shui Wu Lung*. The true article has two layers of skin and the flesh of the animal is yellow, hairs grow in bunches of 3. The true testes placed on the head of a sleeping dog makes it madly dance.

Tengchow and Laichow in Shantung were renowned for a *white furred* animal with black spots.

Sowerby says that the beaver recorded by Schrenk does not belong to the Manchurian fauna. The skins are procurable on the Amur market and in Harbin and Mukden, but recent investigation tends to show that they have been brought from Alaska. ADS, II, 170:

The North American beaver is a different species. The Pen Ts'ao definitely refers to material brought from Kokonor and Western Manchuria. Naturalists agree that the common European beaver extends to Siberia, hence one concludes that the original material was from the *Castor fiber*. However, both the terminology and the facts cited point to an entirely different genus being included in this monograph, whether the "testes of the seal" are actually sold in place of the dried follicles of the beaver future investigation may make clear.

Sealing in the Northern Pacific is described by E. Brass in No. Chi. R. As. Soc. Proc., Vol. 32, p. 79.

386 A. SYN. 海狗. *HAI KOU*. THE FUR-SEAL. *CALLORHINUS URSINUS*, L.

ZN, 956: W: SC: ADS, II, 80: G, 12734: CP: ADS, II, 77: BE, 47:

Also known as 臘肺獸 *Wu Na Shou*, ZN, 1827:

Syn. *Otaria ursina*.

Schrenk obtained it from the Amur region. Various species are seen off the China Coasts, see "The fur-seals and fur-seal islands of the North Pacific Islands," by Jordan and Clark, 1899, Part III. The *Callorhinus curilensis*, Jordan and Clark, was discovered in the Kiril Islands in 1881, it is said to occur off Chefoo and Shanghai.

The Pen Ts'ao appendix also cites "Seal oil", the chemistry is summarized by Elsdon in "Edible oils and fats", p. 448, London, 1926: Wa, 133:

膾 肭 臍. *Wu Na Ch'i*. **DRIED FOLLICLES OF THE BEAVER**, CP. **CASTOR**, BPC.
(SC.=penis).

CMC, 348 (Seal's kidneys), Manchuria: KMN, 1079: SK, 105: Seal's testes, G:

From Kokonor, G. Syn. 海狗腎 Hai Kou Shen, PT, CP=castor: Preserved in alcohol, or with camphor and pepper.

Saline, very heating, nonpoisonous.

For impotency. Aphrodisiac For nymphomania, nightmare, devil possession (various), colic, inordinate appetites, extreme emaciation, and sexual exhaustion. Strengthening to the knees and back. A seminal tonic. For heart pain and abdominal tumors. A stimulant for all kinds of weakness. For delirium, and convulsions. For melancholia and bad complexion.

This often turns out to be the dissected kidneys of some old dog, prepared to meet the demand, PS.

This is the well known *castoreum* formerly official in the British Pharmacopoeia. There are commercial varieties both Canadian and Russian, the latter contains more castorin, see U. S. Dispensatory. The Castor is known as 海狸 Hai Li, ZN, 995: It was used in the earliest European Pharmacopoeias, see Pharmacopoeia Augustana, 1613-1629.

387. 猾. HUA.

From the P'ao Chih Lun.

G, 5023: W:

A sea animal whose marrow when added to water is spontaneously inflammable. Hence it is also called 水中生火 Shui Chung Sheng Huo.

Its literary significance is to a treacherous animal, said to be boneless, and fabled to get into tigers and devour them, W.

Li Shih-Chen said it was not known in his time, but from the old records it appeared to be like camphor both in its physical properties and in its use.

The action of silent electric discharges on fish oils is discussed by L. Hock, in the Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry, London, 1923, 42, 408A.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

III. THE RODENTIA.

Shen-Nung was said to have listed only one of these twelve animals in his materia medica, namely the hedgehog, *Erinaceus dealbatus*, a species of animal common to both Asia and Europe, and which has taken a definite place in the ancient medicine of both continents for many centuries. T'ao Hung-Ching in the Pieh-Lu added the rat and the mole. The latter was well known in Egyptian medicine long before his time, and it was included in the early European pharmacopoeias. It would be interesting to trace the relationship, which existed between the three continents and their practices as they have gone on through the centuries. In some cases the identical use of the same part of like species of animals gives good ground for the theory of the oneness of human culture.

It is of particular note that Li Shih-Chen added new just one half of this group. This I attribute chiefly to the incomplete and confused state of the earlier literature. He says that the Shuo-Wen and the Erh-Ya describe an endless variety of rodents unknown to him yet they omitted common ones of his day. That is, the names and descriptions given were such that he could not make use of them. There is no group of animals including the birds and fishes, unless it be the monkeys, which to this day so lack definition and clear terminology. The tapir-mole in one place is said to be as large as a buffalo, in another place it is confused with the mammoth and said to weigh in its first year one thousand catties. In everyday life apart from size there is no clear distinction made between the rat and the mouse, and the names for beavers, marmots, weasels, gerbils and polecats are not specific, see the text, hence there must be much local variation in the interpretation of literature upon any one given subject. Chiefly northern in character, the best reference material upon them is given by Sowerby and earlier by Von Mollendorff. The vast quantities of skins which pass through the northern markets from Turkestan, Mongolia, Siberia and Manchuria give some indication of the number of animals killed and consumed. Torresani turned to Sowerby, the best authority, for the scientific identity of his material, his notes together with Sowerby's field reports give a good account of the supply and location of material.

The significance in disease of the wild rodents of Manchuria and Mongolia has been reported upon by Dr. Wu Lien-Teh in this Bulletin. In this regard it is of note that the rat, first cited in the Pieh-Lu, A. D. 500, was classed in the third group of strong medicines, and is used for malignant buboes, and the various parts of the animal credited with numerous powerful effects.

The Shih-Yi written by Ch'en Ts'ang-Ch'i, an official of Sianfu, Shensi, rather naturally added the marmot, the mouse and the tapir-mole, animals common to his territory, but the little use to which they were put therapeutically may indicate for two of them the limited character of their distribution in areas well occupied by

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

Chinese civilization. The Ordos and desert country to the north and east must have had great numbers but apart from the interest of trappers not much study can have been made of them.

Some radical changes have taken place in the skin and fur markets of China since the establishment of the republic. With these changes one is driven to the fur dealer for the identity of material, and the trade name rather than the old classical name is in greater use. The Peking Court with its official sable coats, yak chowries, and luxurious fur clothing has now gone, and with it has disappeared much of the expert knowledge of the past. Modern civilization has so progressed that it hardly knows any limit to its power of dyeing and substituting spurious material. The situation depends to-day more on pure science and the direct investigation by trained explorers.

There has been difficulty in establishing the identity of the *Shih Shê Shu*, the snake-eating-rodent. The very meagre account of this animal leads me to suggest the mongoose, so well known in India and so highly valued for its value in eating snakes.

In the general descriptions of the rodents several references are made to the fabulous idea of the ancient Chinese that birds, beasts, and fishes had the power to change each into the other when influenced in some particular manner. This with the demonology of the ancients has no place in modern thought, but in some cases this was the easiest way of accounting for strange natural phenomena, such as the plagues of rodents and the peculiar behaviour of some animals. However, there are some observations which deserve greater thought. The alimentary tract of some of the rodents has certain marked characteristics, such as absence of emesis and nontolerance of a heavy fat diet. The nonfatty character of the flesh of the marmot has been emphasized, and the rat was said to tolerate croton seeds with their drastically purgative oil. One of the names for a marten is a 'Li Shu', the chestnut rat, indicating its love of the chestnut, a nonfatty nut diet. It would be interesting to know why the bite of a mouse was considered so very toxic.

BERNARD E. READ

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 51, Animals No. 3.

鼠類. **THE RODENTS**, 12 kinds.

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
388	鼠	Shu	The Brown Rat. <i>Mus decumanus</i> , Hall.
389	鼯鼠	Yen Shu	Mole. <i>Talpa longirostris</i> , M. Edwards.
390	隱鼠	Yin Shu	The Tapir-mole. <i>Scaptochirus moschatus</i> , M. Edwards.
391	鼯鼠	Shih Shu	Squirrel. <i>Sciurus vulgaris</i> sp., Thomas.
392	竹鼯	Chu Liu	The Bamboo Rat. <i>Rhizomys sinensis</i> , Gray.
393	土撥鼠	T'u Po Shu	The Marmot. <i>Arctomys marmotta</i> , L.
394	貂鼠	Tiao Shu	The Pine Marten. <i>Martes martes</i> , L.
395	黃鼠	Huang Shu	Sand Rat or Gerbil. <i>Meriones unguicu-</i> <i>latus</i> , M. Edwards.
396	鼬鼠	Yu Shu	Siberian Weasel, Mink, or Kolinsky. <i>Mustela itatis</i> , Temm.
397	鼯鼠	Hsi Shu	The Common Mouse. <i>Mus speciosus</i> , Temm.
398	食蛇鼠	Shih Shé Shu	Mongoose. <i>Herpestes</i> sp.
399	猬	Wei	The Hedgehog. <i>Erinaceus dealbatus</i> , Sw.

388. 鼠. SHU. THE BROWN RAT. MUS DECUMANUS, Hall. (The Norway Rat).

Pieh Lu, 3rd group: G, 10072: SC, *M. Norwegicus*: Syn.: W: Lydekker, RNH, III, 140, fig: ZN, 1772: ADS, II, 154, *Epimys norvegicus caraco*, Pallas: Beddard F. E., X, 472: VM, No. 37: Gee, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 1930, IV, pt. 3, p. 80, seventeen species listed.

Formerly classed with the fish and insects, but following the Erh Ya, Li Shih-Chen classes it with the beasts. The common Peking rat is *M. humiliatus*, M. E., VM:

The nose is pointed and on account of its habit of boring holes it is called 鼯鼠 *Chui Shu*. The synonym 老鼠 *Lao Shu* refers to its great longevity. It has a doubting and indecisive character as shown by the repeated appearance of its head out of its hole before leaving it, which accounts for another name 首鼠 *Shou Shu* (head rat). The Cantonese like them for food but prefer to call them "domestic deer" 家鹿 *Chia Lu*. The character *Shu* is said to be a pictorial representation of the animal's head, teeth, belly and tail.

The male animal is preferred in medicine. It is shaped like a small rabbit, dark brown in color. It has 4 incisor teeth, but no grinders, long whiskers, protruding eyeballs, 4 claws in the front feet and 5 claws in the hind feet, tail ringed, as long as the body, but hairless. The liver has 7 lobes, the gall-bladder being in the smallest lobe, as large as a soybean, white in colour very viscid, though it is also reported as being red.

Gestation lasts a month and each litter has 6 or 7 young. Huai-Nan-Tzu said that fish fed on croton seeds would die but rats fatten on such a diet. Rats fed on salt will be thin but arsenic will kill them. Pao-P'u-Tzu said that rats could live to the age of 300 years when they can bewitch people. People possessed by rats are termed 仲 *Chung* and can divine the future for one year ahead and are aware of affairs more than 1,000 *li* away. Li Shih-Chen says the Shuo Wen and the Erh-Ya describe an endless variety unknown in his time yet they omitted the common ones of his day.

SUBHEADINGS.

鼯鼠. *Chung Shu*.

As big as the fist, spotted like a leopard. Possibly allied to the *Jupaia* or banxring of Java, W. From Western China, G, 2896:

鼯鼠. *P'ing Shu*.

Syn. 鼯鼠 *Han Shu*.

A striped variety.

鼯鼠. *Li Ai*.

A small mouse, which travels in file, head to tail by the thousand.

鼯鼠. *Ch'ü Ching*. **Hamster.**

Syn. 地鼠 *Ti Shu*, VM.

Smaller than a mouse, two inches long, short tail, sharp nose, a field animal which harms the crops. (T'zu Yüan).

水鼠. *Shui Shu*. **WATER RAT. MICROTUS SP.**

A small rat which lives on water chestnut, fish etc.

冰鼠. *Ping Shu*.

A thick furred animal from the extreme north under the ice. The skin is used to make warm quilts and the meat is eaten as a cooling medicine.

火鼠. *Huo Shu*.

From Sinkiang and the South Seas. A very large rat born in the wild forest fires. The fur can be made into cloth called 火烧布 *Huo Wan Pu*, which is like asbestos, and is best cleaned by flaming it instead of washing.

鼯鼠. *T'u Shu* **EPIMYS CONFUCIANUS**, M.-Edw. **SULPHUR BELLIED RAT.**

Like the house mouse, but slightly yellow and with a shorter tail. It nests with a particular kind of bird in S. W. Kansu.

鼯鼠. *Chieh Shu*. **ALLACTAGA MONGOLICA**, Radde, (Sowerby 2, 152)

Syn. **DIPUS ANNULATIES**, W. **MONGOLIAN JERBOA.**

Front legs one inch long, hind legs one foot long, tail long. It jumps several feet at a time, after which it falls over. Known as the jumping hare 跳兔 *T'iao T'u* and said to need each other's help in standing up, they are called 比肩獸 *Pi Chien Shou* "mutual-shouldering beast". It lives on liquorice.

The Erh-Ya and Shuo Wen also mention, 鼯 *Ch'ieh* (Ch'ien, W.) A hamster or pouched lemming, W: 鼯 *Ssu*; 鼯 *T'ing*. A spotted rat. (T'zu Yuan).
鼯 *Fei*: 鼯 *Shih*: 鼯 *Wen*: 鼯 *Ho*: 鼯 *Po*:

牡鼠. *Mu Shu*. **THE MALE RAT.** The female rat is not used in medicine.

Sweet, slight warming, nonpoisonous.

Boiled in lard it is applied to fractures and wounds from violent assault, chilblains, burns, scalds, suppurating plague buboes, to remove scars, broken boils, running sores, inflamed ulcers and open wounds. For wounds with tetanus. Ashed it is given to ease the labour of childbirth, for sore breasts, and as a galactagogue.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE RAT.** The male animal.

Sweet, heating, nonpoisonous.

For thrush in children, internal ulcers with swollen abdomen, osteomyelitis. As a galactagogue, and anthelmintic. For weakness of the extremities and emaciation. For ascites, and obstruction of the bowels in children.

肝. *Kan*. **RAT LIVER.** Male.

Applied for otitis media, and to extract the barb of an arrow which has stuck in the skin.

膽. *Tan*. **RAT BILE.**

Dropped in the ear or eye to cure both sudden and chronic deafness and dimness of vision, and blindness.

鼠印 *Shu Yin*. **RAT TESTES.** They are spotted.

Aphrodisiac.

脂. *Chih*. **FAT OF THE RAT.**

Applied to wounds from scalding, and dropped into the ear for deafness.

腦. *Nao* **RAT BRAIN.**

Applied to wounds to extract thorns and prickles, applied to the ear for deafness, and to the skull to unite the bones in children, and used for needles and foreign objects stuck in the throat.

頭. *T'ou*. **HEAD OF THE RAT.** Ashed in the 1st. moon.

For hemorrhoids, wounds from scalding, applied with lard to the nose for purulent catarrh. To cure alcoholism.

目. *Mu*. **EYE OF THE RAT.**

To brighten the eye and enable one to read at night. Ashed it is given for sleepiness and heavy eyelids.

涎. *Yen*. **SALIVA OF THE RAT.** Poison.

If it drops into food which is subsequently eaten by people the latter will developed buboes, or become jaundiced.

脊骨. *Chi Ku*. **VERTEBRAE OF THE RAT.** Male.

For toothache, powdered and applied with camphor and toad venom. It promotes the growth of the teeth.

The ashed tail and feet, are given to expel retained placenta.

皮. *P'i*. **RAT SKIN.** FH, p. 202, in Mongol medicine.

Ashed it is applied to chronic ulcers that do not heal, and to remove pus from bone sores.

糞. *Fen*. **RAT FECES.** Male, distinguished in having pointed ends. FH, p. 204, Mongol:

Sweet, slightly cooling, nonpoisonous. Li Shih-Chen says it is slightly poisonous, if accidentally eaten in food it will cause jaundice.

For distended abdomen in children with the *Kan* disease. For relapsing fever and relapse from typhoid fever.

Ashed and applied to mad dog bites, and sores from cat bite. Applied wet to poisonous snake bites.

For convulsions, and for clearing the vision. For anuria and stoppage of the bowels. Amenorrhoea in the virgin. To expel a dead foetus, and for prolapse of the uterus. Applied to breast abscesses, to malignant buboes which have suppurated, to alopecia in children. With an equal part of human hair

ashed and applied to toxic swollen boils which have been first needled. The ash is applied with lard to compound fractures. The ash is given in water for hemoptosis, and for horse liver poisoning. The feces of the female rat are given plain to promote the growth of the milk-teeth.

血. *Hsüeh*. **RAT BLOOD**, from the Pen Ts'ao appendix, q. v.

389. 鼯鼠. YEN SHU. MOLE. TALPA LONGIROSTRIS, M. Edw.

Pieh Lu, 3rd. group: G, 3528, 13124 = *Scaptochirus moschatus*: ZN, 2571, and SC, *T. mogura*: Lydekker, RNH. I, 338: ADS, II, 19, from Szechuan: VM, p. 54: M. E. C. R. Ac. Sci. Paris, 1870, Vol. 70, p. 341: UMST, lists six species:

Syn. 地老鼠 *Ti Lao Shu*, G, 3528: 犁鼠 *Li Shu*, G, 3528: 田鼠 *T'ien Shu*, PT, G: 鼯鼠 *Fen Shu*, PT, G: 隱鼠 *Yin Shu*, PT.

Beddard says that the *Talpa* just gets over the boundary into the oriental region, FEB, X, 517.

The term "Yin Shu" correctly refers to the tapir, see No. 390, also G, 13124.

It travels under ground hence the name which implies a crouching or hiding animal. It is a burrower and a mound builder hence the various other Chinese names.

It is easy to catch and is taken from its burrow in the 5th moon, killed and fire dried. Like a large tailless rat, black with a strong pointed nose. It is said to die if exposed to the light of the sun or moon. It is very fat. In times of drought it attacks the crops. The feet are very short, tail not more than about an inch long. The eyes are very small, neck short. In spring it is said to metamorphose into a kind of quail 鴛 *Ju*, and in autumn it changes back to a mole. In the reign of Lung Ch'ing, A.D. 1571, there was a great plague of moles, which were said to have come from the metamorphosis of a fish, the Chieh Yü 櫛魚. The roots of the crops and reeds were all eaten. They are sought after by some people with the bow and arrow, as good food for pet falcons.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE MOLE**. London A. D. 1677, WAC: Papyrus Ebers, Egypt. B. C. 1500:

Saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

Anthelmintic. Taken frequently it removes chills and cures scabies and all kinds of anal fistulas. For stasis of the circulation causing cancerous growths, and for fevers.

Roasted it is applied to carcinomas, broken boils, itching genitalia, inflamed sores, and all kinds of ulcers.

膏. *Kao*. **MOLE FAT**.

Applied to sores.

糞. *Fen*. **MOLE FECES**.

Powdered and applied with lard to snake bite.

390. 隱鼠. YIN SHU. THE TAPIR-MOLE. SCAPTOCHINUS MOSCHATUS.

Shih-Yi: G, 13124: ADS, II, 19, *S. lepturus*, M. Edw.: VM, No. 24: Ann. Sc. Nat. Zool., 1867, Vol. 7, p. 375: Gee, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., Vol. IV, p. 53: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 61, six species in North China.

Syn. 鼯鼠 *Yen Shu*, PT, G: 鼠母 *Shu Mu*, PT: 偃牛 *Yen Niu*, PT: 鼠王 *Shu Wang*, PT:

It is a large mole which lives in the mountain forests as large as a buffalo. It is pig shaped, greyish pink in colour, the chest and tail are white. It is strong and clumsy. It is edible and tastes like beef. It appears in great numbers in time of flood. As the king of rodents every drop of hair or semen that falls to the ground is said to turn into a rat, and the crops are all eaten up by them.

The feet and head are like a rat, the nose is pointed, dark grey in colour, it is afraid of dogs. It was found in Anhui at Ning-Kuo-Fu, and in Shansi, Ninghsien. The leg is like an elephant from the knee down but the hoof is like a donkey. The old Liang Shu records them as existing in the hills of Japan. They were eaten by big snakes. It is said to weigh at the end of its first year 1,000 catties.*

Shensi people call them "small donkeys".

膏. *Kao*. **FAT.**

For piles and inflamed sores.

391. 鼯鼠. SHIH SHU. SQUIRREL. SCIURUS VULGARIS SP.,
Thomas.

Kang Mu: G, 9968: SC, Black weasel: VM, *S. davidianus*, Edw.: ADS, II, 146: ZN, 589: Beddard, F. E., X, 464, the Chinese squirrel is *S. castaneiventris*: Lydekker, RNH, III, 72: RB, 81: BE, 41: Howell, J. Acad. Sci. Washington, 1927, XVII, 81, *S. caniceps*, Chekiang: Hilzheimer, Zool. Anzeiger, 1905, XXIX, 298, *S. tsingtaoensis*, Shantung: Sowerby, Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist., 1921, VII, 253, *S. vulgaris chinensis*, Chihli: Gee, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 1930, IV, 72: UMST, p. 34, says it is abundant in North China, Manchuria, Mongolia and Siberia. Report on Chinese literature, S. W. Williams, China Repository, VII, 90:

Syn. 碩鼠 *Shuo Shu*, PT, G, 9967, read *Shih Shu*: 鼯鼠 *Cho Shu*, G, PT: 雀鼠 *Ch'ieh Shu*, PT: 鼯鼠 *Chiin Shu*, PT: 灰狗子 *Hui Kou Tzu*, ADS: 松鼠 *Sung Shu*, VM, ZN:

* This sounds preposterous but as a matter of fact it refers to the MAMMOTH, also called the "Fen Shu" in K'anghsi's encyclopedia. "The mammoth's remains being found embedded in ice or frozen ground, the idea may have obtained that it was of burrowing habits". The Encyclopedia Sinica, S. Cooling, Shanghai, 1917.

Larger than a rat, of extensive distribution. It lives in hollow trees and in the ground. Head like a rabbit. The tail is dark yellow. It has a loud cry. It can stand up like a man, and fold its front paws and dance. It lives on rice and beans. The squirrel = 灰鼠 *Hui Shu*, G, 5155: or 松鼠 *Sung Shu*, G, 10072: VM, No. 32: The tail hair is used for pens.

肚. *Tu*. **STOMACH OF THE SQUIRREL.** Powdered.

Sweet, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For all kinds of fevers, and for a swollen painful throat.

392. 竹鼯. CHU LIU. THE BAMBOO RAT. RHIZOMYS SINENSIS,
Gray.

Li Shih-Chen: W: G, 10072: UMST: SC, *Mustela sp.*: F. E. Beddard, X, 482, 3 other species cited, fig: Lydekker, RNH, III, 148: Gray, Proc. Zool. Soc. London, 1830, p. 95: Gee, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 1930, IV, 84, five species:

Syn. 竹鼯 *Chu T'un*, PT: 竹鼯 *Chu Liu*, G.

A plump animal. A rat in the south that lives on the roots of bamboos, and lives underground. As large as a rabbit and often eaten for food, tasting like duck meat. It is said to soften mutton when the two are cooked together, just as terrapin is made tender by adding a few mosquitoes.

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

肉. *Jou*. **MEAT OF THE BAMBOO RAT.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

Tonic to the stomach, benefitting the respiration, and an antidote to poisons.

393. 土撥鼠. T'U PO SHU. THE MARMOT. ARCTOMYS MARMOTTA, L.

Shih-Yi: ZN, p. 50: Wu, L. T., Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 1930, 4, 96, Fig: SC, *Mus sp.*: ADS, II, 150, *Arctomys sibiricus*, Radde, fig: Am. Mus. Nov., 1925, p. 4:

Syn. *Marmota (Arctomys) bobak sibirica*, Radde, Reise im Süden v. Ost-sibirien, 1682, I, 159: F. E. Beddard, X, 466, *A. bobac*, the Siberian marmot: Lydekker, RNH, III, 84, fig: FH, 198: BE, 44: 鼯鼯 *T'o Po*, PT; W: G, 11363 = the beaver: 蒼刺不花 *Ta Tz'u Pu Hua*, PT.

Williams and Giles both translate 鼯 as "beaver", found in Mongolia. Sowerby says the skins of these animals find their way to the Harbin and Mukden markets but they come from Alaska. The Mongol name Ta-T'zu-Pu-Hua is more generally rendered Tarabagan, the Pen Ts'ao incorrectly gives the character 刺 T'zu for 刺 La.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The name 鼯 indicates its plumpness, Williams says fatness, but it should be noted that Li Shih-Chen says the meat when boiled yields no oil. The name "T'u Po Shu" is said to come from the T'ang dynasty name 鼯鼯 P'u P'o.

The marmot inhabits the northern provinces of Mongolia, Manchuria, and Chinese Turkestan. The Pen Ts'ao says that it inhabits the hills and river districts of Hsi-Fan (Turkestan), from which large quantities of skins to-day come to the China markets. But as Torresani points out the marmot also inhabits the northern provinces of Mongolia and Manchuria. The Siberian marmot, *A. sibericus* Radde or *A. bobac* is illustrated and discussed by Dr. Wu Lien-Teh in the Peking Natural History Bulletin, 1930, 4, II, 96.

It is a burrower, and is hunted for food and the skins are valuable, being warm and water-tight. The northwestern peoples were said to hunt the 辟毒鼠 *Pi Tu Shu*, a poison-antidote-rat which was like the marmot.

肉. *Jou*, **FLESH OF THE MARMOT.** (The liver in Mongol medicine, FH. p. 198).

When boiled there is little oil. The meat has little taste. Eaten to excess it is indigestible and is apt to cause "wind".

Taken internally for hemorrhoids.

頭骨. *T'ou Ku*. **THE SKULL OF THE MARMOT.**

Hung at the side of the bed it will quieten a restless child at night.

394. 貂鼠. TIAO SHU. THE PINE MARTEN. MARTES MARTES,
L. (Syn. *M. Melampus*, Temm.)

Li Shih-Chen: ADS, II, 64: ZN, 1607: Syst. Nat. Ed. 12, I, 1766, p. 67 & 68: G, 11045 = Sable: F. E. Beddard, X, 435: Lydekker, RNH, II, 51, fig.: UMST, p. 28, Siberia, Kansu and Szechuan: RB, 82: ADS, No. Chi. RASP. 1916, 47, 79, four species North China.

Syn 栗鼠 *Li Shu*, PT: 松狗 *Sung Kou*, PT:

The synonymous Chinese names refer to its liking for chestnuts and pine seeds, they also clearly indicate that this is a marten. The Sable, *M. zibellina*, L., the *Hei Tiao* 黑貂 is closely allied to this. Li Shih-Chen recognizes two types of marten, the white called 銀貂 *Yin Tiao*, and the yellow 黃貂 *Huang Tiao*. Reference is also made to Hsü Shen of the Han dynasty who differentiated between black (sable) and yellow (marten) varieties of the *Tiao*. It inhabited Liaotung, Korea, Kirin and the Mongolian provinces. To-day these are called Siberian Sable, and Szechuan Sable, the fur of the former valued at Tls. 35 to 80 each, is five times the price of the marten. Torresani, p. 33:

As big as an otter, with a thick tail having hair over an inch long, very smooth but not shiny. The 紫黑 violet black variety (sable) was used for making coats and hats for the highest officials, worn in winter exceedingly warm and waterproof. RB, 81: Snow falling on it melts and runs off. Worn near a fire the hair readily falls out. In the Han dynasty the tail was used in

the headdress with a cicada. The marten has a finer tail than the sable so probably it was the official animal at that time.

肉 *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE PINE MARTEN.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

No uses are mentioned. The Appendix to the Pen Ts'ao adds the *TAIL*.

毛皮. *Mao P'i*. **THE SKIN AND FUR OF THE PINE MARTEN.** UMST, 28: RB, 82:

A coat cuff made of this, wiped over the eye will remove all dirt and dust which may have entered.

395. 黃鼠. HUANG SHU. SAND RAT OR GERBIL. MERIONES UNGUICULATUS.

Li Shih-Chen: ADS: FF, 67: W: G, 10072=a kind of yellow marmot: SC, Common rat: M. Edwards, Ann. des. Sci. Nat. Zool., 1867, VII, 377: Am. Mus. Nov., 1927, No. 270: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 81, three species N. China:

Syn. 禮鼠 *Li Shu*, PT: 拱鼠 *Kung Shu*, PT: 鼯鼠 *Hun Shu*, PT: 貔狸 *P'i Li*, PT.

The first 2 Chinese names refer to its proverbial politeness.

Sowerby gives a list of three Huang Shu in the northern provinces:

Meriones anceps in Shansi and Shensi.

M. psammophilus, in Shansi and Chihli.

M. unguiculatus, in N. Shansi, Ordos and Mongolia.

Li Shih-Chen says it comes from Taiyuan, Tat'ung, Yensui, and Shamo. Manchurians value it very highly.

There is a very small animal the yellow hamster, *Cricetulus furunculus*, Pall., which is also very common and may be mistaken for this. It is cited in Wu Lien-Teh's list of Rodents of Manchuria and Mongolia. Peking Natural History Bulletin, 1929, 4, II, 100. Giles says it is a yellow marmot. Williams and Giles both state that *Hun Shu* is the marmot, *Arctomys marmotta*.

Like a rat, with short legs it travels quickly but is plump. It is a burrower and it stores beans, chestnuts, and all kinds of seeds underground to pass the winter. The Pen Ts'ao notes its regular habits. Its food stuffs are carefully stored in separate compartments, and the sleeping rooms have bedlike structures. They are hunted by filling up the runways with water, from which the animals flee. They have a good taste like fat pork and the meat is crisp. The skin is used for coats and coat collars. This looks as if this name 黃鼠 *Huang Shu*, referred to the spring form of the ordinary marmot (No. 393) which is yellow, Torresani, p. 26.

In the early days of the Liao, Chin and Yüan dynasties people reared them on goats milk and sent them to the court for food.

The Huang Shu is most afraid of the weasel. The latter can drive it out of its hole.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

- 395A. Reference is made to the 白鼠 *Pai Shu*, the Manchurian weasel, *Mustela nivalis pygmeus*, Allen, ADS, Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist., 1903, **19**, p. 176. Also to the 銀鼠 *Yin Shu*, G, 10072, Ermine (stoat) *Mustela erminea*, syn. 鼬鼠 *Hsi Shu*, used for clothing, see Torresani.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE GERBIL.**

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

Eaten to excess it will cause boils.

It soothes the lungs, stimulating bronchial secretion. Made into an extract it is applied to swollen ulcers to stop the pain and counteract the infection.

Li Shih-Chen. It is a common food in the north. The famous prescription of 靈鼠膏 *Ling Shu Kao* is made by cooking a big gerbil in oil on a slow fire, then adding red lead and wax and heating down to make a black plaster mass.

396. 鼬鼠. YU SHU. SIBERIAN WEASEL, MINK, or KOLINSKY. MUSTELA ITATIS, Temm., ZN.

Kang-Mu: ZN, p. 2319: UMST, p. 19: G, 13412: SC: VM, No. 21: Lydekker, RNH, II, 67: ADS, II, 69, *M. sibirica davidiana*, M. Edw: RB, 78: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1016, **47**, 79, eight species in North China: BE, p. 31:

Syn. 黃鼠狼 *Huang Shu Lang*, PT, G, 10072 = a kind of yellow marmot: 鼬鼠 *Sheng Shu*, 鼯鼠 *Ku Shu*, 地猴 *Ti Hou*, PT: *Putorius sibiricus*, VM.

This is undoubtedly one of the weasels. Torresani's list revised by Sowerby gives it as *M. sibirica* or *M. davidiana*. Giles says it is either the North China polecat or the Siberian weasel for both of which he gives the genus name *Putorius*, G, 13412: see Edwards, *Etud. Mamm*, p. 205, pl. 61:

The Kwang Ya describes it as being of a golden colour like a pumelo, hence the name *Yu*. It was used for hunting rodents, birds, and small animals. It can overcome poisonous snakes.

Like a rat with a long body and a large tail, yellow fur with a little red in it. It stinks. The polecat, *Mustela putorius*, is definitely known as 地狗 *Ti Kou*, its fur is cheap, perhaps on account of the odour, UMST, p. 11. Hsü-Shen's account places them larger than a sable, of a golden yellow colour. The hair and tail were made into brush-pens, which would hold up in the coldest weather.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE WEASEL.**

Sweet taste, fetid odour, warming, slightly poisonous.

Boiled in oil it is applied to scabies. It kills parasites.

心肝. *Hsin Kan*. **HEART AND LIVER OF THE WEASEL.**

Fetid and slightly poisonous.

For pain in the heart and epigastrium, anthelmintic.

397. 鼯鼠. HSI SHU. THE COMMON MOUSE. MUS SPECIOSUS, Temm.

Shih-Yi: ZN, 1775: Cf. ADS, II, 159: CP, 1483: W: G, 4072:

Syn. 甘口鼠 *Kan K'ou Shu*, PT, G, 10072: 耗子 *Hao Tzu*, W: ZN, *Apodemus speciosus*.

A very small kind of rat, the bite of which is said not to give pain but to be venomous causing a bad local wound. The biting of men, horses or cows is fatal, death coming without warning. The Erh Ya describes it as a venomous "sting". In the Chou dynasty the imperial sacrifices were eaten up by these troublesome little animals. An excessive diet of mice in the first lunar month causes bleeding piles, cured by applying lard and taking the flesh of the wild cat.

The mouse is without value in therapeutics, but is included to warn people of its injurious effect.

398. 食蛇鼠. SHIH SHE SHU. MONGOOSE. HERPESTES SP.

Kang-Mu: ZN, 1829: Lydekker, RNH, I, 471:

In the T'ang dynasty they were presented to the court from Cashmere. An ichneumon with a pointed head and a red tail. In case of snake bite the animal was made to smell the wound after which it urinated. The urine applied to the wound caused it to heal. The only other animal which this might be is one of the shrews but those are so common in China, it was not likely to have been regarded as a royal present.

Four species of *Herpestes* are known in China. This may refer to *H. rubrifrons*, (Allen) of Hainan. The Indian mongoose is listed as 蒙哥 *Meng Ko*, an obvious transliteration of the foreign name. There is no indication of the synonym 貓鼬 *Mao Yu*, a truly indigenous name.

尿. *Sui*. URINE.

For snake bite.

399. 猬. THE HEDGEHOG. ERINACEUS DEALBATUS, Sw.

Shen-nung, 2nd. group: ZN, 1489: ADS, II, 16: RB, p. 49: W: G, 12578: PS, 117: SC: Lydekker, RNH, says the European animal extends to China: VM, No. 23: Swinhoe, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1870, p. 450: PH, 52: ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 78, lists 4 species in N. China.

Syn. 曩 *Wei*: 蝟鼠 *Wei Shu*, G, PT: 毛刺 *Mao T'zu*, PT: 刺猬 *T'zu Wei*, W, G, VM: 黑猪 *Hei Chu*, SK, p. 95:

The head and feet are like a rat. The use of this animal for regurgitation and various stomach troubles is the reason for the construction of its name and character. In the time of the Pieh-Lu it was found in the hills and cultivated plains of Hupeh.* There was no special season for its collection.

*The Hupeh animal is *E. hanensis*, Matschie. Wiss. Erg. der Exped. Filchner nach China und Tibet, 10, Band, 1. Teil, p. 138:

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

It has short legs, like a pig, and a tail a little over an inch long. It is a brownish white colour. Quills like a porcupine. It can roll itself up like the *Eurayale ferox* fruit or a burried chestnut, and it unrolls to urinate. The quills are short and have a forked tip. Another species of animal is mentioned which has different quills just like jujube thorns 蠟 *Hui*. Kuang Yun spoke of a red tailed animal called 暨居 *Chi Chü*. Inferior kinds have feet like a rat. Another kind with a forked tail is called 山枳鼠 *Shan Chih Shu*.

The skin and spines together make a good clothes brush.

It is a repulsive clumsy animal, as large as a badger, and as small as a musk melon. It so dislikes the magpie's call that it rolls over on its back and allows the bird to peck it in order that it may close over and hold the bird fast in its clutches as tightly as a clam. Magpie dung is poisonous to the hedgehog. Tigers are said to be scared by hedgehogs. Implying a relationship with an animal quite different from the hedgehog, Li Shih-Chen thinks it must mean a kind of flying squirrel termed 鼯鼠 *P'iao Shu*, which resides in the branches of trees.

Hot hedgehog fat added to iron with a little mercury makes the iron as soft as pewter (鉛錫).

皮. *P'i* **THE SKIN OF THE HEDGEHOG.** (Snout, PS.) (Skin of snout of head is prepared, RB.) SK, p. 95: PH, 52: RB, 49, Central and Southern China:

Cut up and roasted black.

Bitter, bland, nonpoisonous.

For all kinds of bleeding piles given both internally and externally mixed with moxa it is burnt, the fumes of 3 treatments will produce a lasting cure. The ash with oil is applied to worm infested piles, prolapse of the rectum. The ash is applied on cotton to a bleeding nose and to polypi. The ash is given internally for nausea and vomiting, hydrophobia, and dysentery. It is smeared on the breast to quieten a frightened baby. The ash is supposed to have unusual value as a styptic both externally and internally. Given for rupture and colic. Whole hedgehog skins have an extensive sale in the North China drug markets, price 80 cents a catty.

肉. *Jou* **HEDGEHOG FLESH.** London Pharmacopoeia, A. D. 1677: WAC:

Sweet, bland, nonpoisonous.

Give for nausea and lack of appetite. It is good for piles.

脂. *Chih*. **HEDGEHOG FAT.** London Pharmacopoeia, 1677: WAC:

For flatulence and bloody diarrhoea. Dropped into the ear for deafness. Applied externally for alopecia, scabies, and eczema. It is anthelmintic. As a dressing for wounds from a tiger.

In old English medicine it was used extensively for earache, deafness, abscesses etc. See *Pharmaceutical J.*, 1931, 126, 7.

腦. *Nao*. **HEDGEHOG BRAIN.**

For ulcers.

心肝. *Hsin Kan*. **HEART AND LIVER OF THE HEDGEHOG.**

The ash is given for swollen glands, and for fistula.

膽. *Tan*. **HEDGEHOG BILE.**

Dropped in the eye to stop lachrymation. Applied to piles. Applied to eyes for difficulties following smallpox.

The hedgehog is considered one of the five great fairies, and some people do not like them to be killed, viz. the fox, rat, polecat, snake, and hedgehog.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA.

IV. THE MONKEYS AND SUPERNATURAL BEINGS.

With the exception of the orang these are cited from much earlier authors than Li Shih-Chen, and needless to say there is a considerable amount of old folk-lore herein. It has been difficult to make certain identifications, except to definitely deny that a *Jung* 401 is a marmoset as given by some authorities, for it is limited in its distribution to South America, and to cast doubt on the identification of a *Fei Fei* as a baboon. This group needs more facts, the material is presented in a tentative form.

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 51, Animals No. 4.

寓 YÜ, THE MONKEYS and 怪 KUAI, SUPERNATURAL BEINGS.

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
400	獼猴	Mi Hou	The Monkey. <i>Macacus tcheliensis</i> , Edw.
401	狨	Jung	The Gibbons. <i>Hylobates entelloides</i> .
402	果然	Kuo Jan	The Proboscis Monkey. <i>Semnopithecus larvatus</i> .
403	猩猩	Hsing Hsing	Orangoutang. <i>Simia satyrus</i> , L.
404	狒狒	Fei Fei	Moupin Langur. <i>Rhinopithecus roxellanae</i> , M. E.
405	罔兩	Wang Liang	A Sprite or Elf, G.
406	彭侯	P'eng Hou	A Dryad.
467	封	Feng	A Naiad.

400. 獼猴. MI HOU. THE MONKEY. MACACUS TCHELIENSIS, Edw.

Cheng Lei Pen Ts'ao: VM, p. 46: CP: ZN, 2394: W: NGG; Milne Edwards, Rech. Mamm., 1868-74, p. 227, pls. 32 and 33: G, 7814: G, 4011: SC: ES, p. 38: Lydekker, RNH, fig. *M. Sinicus*, I, 110: Beddard, X, 563, fig: Gray, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1868, p. 60, *M. lasiotus*: Pousargues, Bull. Mus. Nat. Hist., 1895, I, 233, *M. arctoïdes*.

Syn. 沐猴 *Mu Hou*; 爲猴 *Wei Hou*; 胡孫 *Hu Sun*; 王孫 *Wang Sun*; 馬留 *Ma Liu*; 狙 *Chü*: *M. chinensis*, ZN.

The name *Hou* was said to come from the great time sense of the animal, its powers of observation and ability to wait till the right time of action, such as in eating up the scraps from a man's meal. The name '*Mi Hou*' comes from 'Mu Hou' which means the washing monkey. Seeing that monkeys were considered to be so like the Tartars in appearance they were called 'Hu Sun', descendants of the Huns, (this should not be regarded as discordant with the theory of evolution). The name 'Ma Liu' refers to the custom of keeping a female monkey in the horses' stable to ward off sickness (The menstrual discharge of the monkey is said to give immunity to the horse against infectious disease, cf. The menstrual cycles of the primates, S. Zuckerman, Proc. Zool. Soc. London, 1930, **45**, p. 691-754. The Pen Ts'ao appendix includes the menstrual discharge 猴經 as a remedy.) The Sanskrit name is 摩斯咤 *Mo Ssu Ch'a*, which is not so remote from the genus name *Macacus*. The family term for monkeys is 禺 *Yü*. Those used in the time of the Shen Wei were yellow haired, red faced and long tailed. The domestic monkey is useless in medicine because of his change in diet and general character. The Taoist, Pao P'u Tzu, considered that monkeys after living 800 to 1,000 years metamorphosed into toads.

Monkeys were said to be found in all the high mountainous parts of China. Before the destruction of the Tung Ling forests during the Ch'ing dynasty there were monkeys in the mountains east of Peking. This was the *Macacus tcheliensis*, M. Edw., seen in the Peking fairs, a short tailed, thick furred animal mentioned by Père David in 1873, Roy. Asiat. Soc. Proc., p. 230. Described by Milne Edwards, Etudes pour servir à L'histoire de la Faune mammal de la Chine, p. 327, pl. 32-33.

Another species is the *M. tibetanus*, M-Edw., of Tibet and S.W. Kansu, Central China has the *M. fuscatus*, Sowerby, No. Chi. RASP 1916, **47**, 58.

SUBHEADING.

400 A. 獼. *Ch'üeh*. W: G, 3244:

A species of large ape or hooluck, found in Western China, and said to be six feet high, it probably denotes the great gibbon, *Hylobates*, W.

From the mountains of the western borderlands of Szechuan. A large animal, bigger than a macaque, coloured dark brown, it walks erect. It steals

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

people's property and is a great observer. There are no females so it goes after women for a mate who bear its young. The Shen Yi Ching records another animal the 獼 Ti, (W.=Ch'ou), as large as a donkey, of which there are no males. It is a good tree climber. They congregate in groups on the main roads and seize men to mate with them and subsequently become pregnant. It may be the dusky gibbon, *Hylobates funereus*, W.

400 B. 虞 Chü. **INUUS SILENUS**, ZN, 2396: Erh Ya: W: G, 3042:

A hill animal as large as a dog yellow black in colour from Chien P'ing (Szechuan, Wu Shan Hsien), bearded and with a mane. They carry stones on the head to throw at people who attack them.

The Hsi Shan Ching says it is the same as the long armed monkey called 舉父 Chü Fu.

Li Shih-Chen described them as being shaped like a man, with eyes of an apprehensive Hun, and food pockets in its hollowed cheeks. It has no spleen in its abdomen, so it depends on exercise to regulate its digestion. There is no hair on the seat, short tailed, feet and hands like a man, and it can walk erect. It makes a noise Ko-Ko as if it had a cough. Gestation is 5 months long. The young are washed in mountain ponds. It has a restless destructive temperament. To train them people tie them to a pole and constantly beat them for a month after which they are obedient.

The small animals with short tails are called 猴 Hou.

A large long tailed red eyed animal is the 禺 Yü.

A small long tailed upturned nose animal is 狢 Yu, W. a douc, a species of black monkey, see 402:

A large 狢 Yu is a 果然 Kuo Jan, see 402.

A small 狢 Yu is the 蒙頰 Meng Sung, see 42a.

A rapidly moving 狢 Yu is the 獼 Ts'an Hu, Cf. *Hylobates* sp. the agile gibbon, ZN, 733. See 402 B.

肉. Jou. **FLESH OF THE MACAQUE.** KMN, 1073:

Acid, bland, nonpoisonous.

Pickled in wine it is good for chronic malaria, and all kinds of lassitude. It is prophylactic against malaria.

In the south it is considered a delicacy smoked or salted.

頭骨. T'ou Ku. **CRANIUM OF THE MACAQUE.** Mongol medicine, FH, p. 197: Cf. SK, p. 104:

Ashed and given with wine for malaria.

Boiled in water it is used as a bath for children in convulsions, and for feverish chills.

手. Shou. **MACAQUE PAW.**

For children in convulsions.

屎. *Shih*. **FECES OF THE MACAQUE.**

Applied to spider bites. Ashed and given with honey to children in convulsions, and for colic.

皮. *P'i*. **MACAQUE SKIN.**

To treat infectious diseases in horses.

A female monkey kept in the stable of a horse is most effective. The menstrual fluid shed on to the straw is eaten by the horse and the latter gets a lasting immunity against infectious disease. This is also cited in the Appendix to the Pen Ts'ao, under 猴經 Hou Ching.

401. 狨 JUNG. THE GIBBONS. HYLOBATES ENTELLOIDES.

Shih-Yi: G, 5750: W: SC: ZN, 796, The Marmoset:

Syn. 猯 *Jou*, PT, G, 8160=*Nao*:

The hair is soft and long, and can be used for weaving.

The name is also said to come from 西戎 Hsi Jung (Szechuan) its natural habitat. The Szechuan monkey is *Rhinopithecus roxellanae*, a golden haired animal. ADS, No. Chi. RASP, 1916, 47, 58, see No. 404.

The T'an Yuan written by Yang-Yi says they come from the deep valleys of the mountains of Szechuan. There are large and small with long, golden tails, from which comes the common name 金線狨 Chin Hsien Jung. It is light in weight and climbs trees very quickly. It is very proud of its tail, so that when men hunt it with poison arrows after it is wounded it chews up its tail. In the Sung dynasty only officials above the 3rd grade used the skin as a chairmat or as a sleeping mat. The marmosets are confined to central and south America, see Beddard or Lydekker, so this cannot be so identified, ZN.

SUBHEADING.

401 A. 猿. *Yüan*. **THE GIBBON. HYLOBATES AGILIS.**

ZN, 731: NGG, *H. hainanus*: G, 13741: Yerkes, The Great Apes, pp. 47-102, New Haven, 1929: Lydekker, RNH, I, 64: Beddard, X, 571: Pousargues, Bull. Mus. Nat. Hist., 1898, IV, p. 9, *H. henrici*: CP. 長臂猿 Ch'ang Pei Hou, ZN, the long armed monkey.

From the Szechuan and Kwangsi mountains. A long armed monkey. It is long lived because it can hold its breath (Taoist practice). The arm bones make good flutes. There are various types, white, red, yellow, black, and dark blue. It is quiet and tenderhearted. It likes fruits and seeds, living in the woods and forests. It can jump many tens of feet. If it falls to the ground it dies of diarrhoea, which can be avoided by giving it aconite juice. It travels in groups, and makes a crying noise with three notes which pierces a man vitally. The Kuei Hai by Fan Shih says they are yellow in colour with a white face, or black faces, others say yellow animals are males

and the black are females which can whistle, but the males cannot. The Hsün Chi says that they are all born black but the old males turn yellow, when the genitalia rot off and they becomes females and are pregnant. After several hundred years they turn white.

401 B. 獨. *Tu*.

A species of baboon or mandrill, W: G, 12073:

Bigger than a gibbon, solitary. It has a cry of a single note. It eats gibbons and monkeys, hence they run away as soon as they hear its cry.

It is said to be same as the 黃腰 *Huang Yao* cited under the tigers.

肉及血. *Jou chi Hsüeh*. **BLOOD and FLESH OF THE GIBBON.**

For fistula in ano. KMN, 1073:

脂. *Chih*. **FAT OF THE GIBBON.**

Applied for scabies.

The placenta, liver, and bile of the gibbon are used in Japanese Domestic medicine, SK, p. 105:

402. 果然 *KUO JAN*. **THE PROBOSCIS MONKEY. SEMNOPITHECUS LARVATUS.**

Shih-Yi: W: G, 13556, 6630: ZN, 141: Erh Ya, Chap. 18: SC—*Cercopithecus*: Beddard, X, 568: Lydekker, RNH. I, 83, *S. roxellanae*: Pousarguas, Bull. Mus. Nat. Hist., 1898, IV, 319, *S. francoisi*: Some have made it a special species, *Rhinopithecus*.

Syn. 裸猴 *Kuo Jan*, PT. 禺 *Yü*, 狢 *Yu*, 雌 *Lei*, 仙猴 *Hsien Hou*, PT:

Kuo P'u says the animal is named after its call 'Kuo Jan'. Lo Yuan explains the name after the certain character of the animal. When one is caught the others will certainly cry and follow in a group, even when killed they will not leave the dead one.

The big animals are called 然 *Jan* or 禺 *Yü**. The small ones are 狢 *Yu* or 雌 *Lei*. The southern name is 仙猴 *Hsien Hou*** (In No. 400 the *Yü* is defined as a large long tailed, red eyed animal. The *Yu* is described as small, long tailed, upturned nose.) Ch'en Ts'ang Ch'i says:—It comes from Chiaochoo (Annam). It is larger than the gibbon, the trunk of the body is not more than three feet long, the tail is very long reaching over the head. It has a long upturned nose. When it rains it sits on a branch of a tree and stops up its nose with its tail. The hair is long, soft, fine, and glossy. It is white

*禺 *Yu*, G: W: is a term for quadrumanous animals, more particularly those like the spider-monkeys. 狢 *Yu* is a species of black monkey probably allied to the douc.

**The *S. entellus*, L. of the East Indies is called 神猴 *Shen Hou* because it is said to have a human soul, ZN, 141: this name is like 仙猴 *Hsien Hou* which the Pen Ts'ao gives as the southern name.

with black spots. Like a gray duck it is spotted on its sides. The skin makes very warm comfortable coats and robes. (The Erh Ya says they occurred in numbers in Chekiang.) Li Shih-Chen describes them as tenderhearted animals from the southwest mountains, arboreal in habits. Like a gibbon, white face with black jaws, a long beard. The hair is beautifully coloured with spots and glossy. The tail is forked at the end, hence it can stop up both nostrils when there is rain. It travels in groups, the old ones in front and the young ones behind. The practice reciprocity in yielding to each other's liking for certain foods or dwelling quarters. They like to keep together both in life and death. Liu Tsung-Yuan said they are the personification of benevolence, respect, filial piety and charity. In ancient days they were used to decorate the imperial sacrificial vessels as emblematical of filial piety, respect and wisdom. The smaller animal the 狢 Yu is very suspicious, when it sees people it runs up and down the branches of the trees knocking itself, cutting its head and breaking its limbs, and so the ancients regarded it as the symbol of doubt and indecision.

SUBHEADING.

402 A. 蒙頰. *Meng Sung*. Erh Ya: NGG, Peking Soc. Nat. Bull., 4, III, 60:

Syn. 蒙貴 *Meng Kuei*, ZN, 1829. *Herpestes mungo*, The mongoose.

The Erh Ya says it is universal but the Siamese are the best.

An animal like a small proboscis monkey, purple black in colour, from Yunnan (交趾). They are reared as rat catchers better than cats.

402 B. 獼猴. *Ts'an Hu*. **MACACUS SANCTI-JOHANNIS.**

W: ZN, 1804: NGG, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 4, III, 86: Swinhoe, Proc. Zool. Soc., 1866, p. 555: G, 4933:

Syn. 斬鬪 *Chan Hu*. (Shuo-Wen). A kind of monkey with a black body and a white waist girdle. From the palm of the hand it has long strands of white hairs. In the Shu-Ti-Chih (Szechuan records), there is an animal called 'Ts'an Hu' like a monkey which is very swift, it travels through the trees like a bird.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE PROBOSCIS MONKEY.**

Saline, bland, nonpoisonous.

For malaria and chills.

403. 猩猩. HSING HSING. ORANGOUTANG. SIMIA SATYRUS, L.

Kang Mu, *Sheng Sheng*: ZN, 1488: NGG, Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 4, III, p. 86: Erh Ya: SC: CP: C. Abel. *Asiat. Research*, 1825, XV, 489-498, Calcutta: and *Narrative of a journey in China*, 1818, London: Yerkes, *The Great Apes*, pp. 103-191, New Haven, 1929: *Rhinopithecus roxellanae*, David, W.

Syn. *Pithecus satyrus*:

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

Li Shih-Chen says the name comes from the extraordinary intelligence of the animal. It can talk and can foretell the future. It comes from the mountainous valleys of Yunnan. It is shaped like a dog and a macaque. Yellow hair like a gibbon, white piglike ears, human face and feet, long hair. The head and face is well proportioned. Its voice is like a baby's cry and a dog's bark. It travels in colonies on all fours. If a man puts wine and sandals at the roadside these orangs when they see them, thinking that the man has come to trap them, call out the names of his ancestors and after cursing, run away. After a while a number will come back together and taste the wine and try on the shoes, and then they are easily caught and caged. A figure of the "Representation of capture of apes in the act of putting on boots" from Pigafetta 1598 is given by Yerkes in "The Great Apes". If people come to eat them they push the fattest one to the front weeping the while. The western borderland tribes use the blood to dye wool an indelible red. Li Shih-Chen questions its ability to talk and after citing various authorities he says it can probably like a parrot imitating man's speech a little. Some authorities say it is most like a baboon, but it is probably the same as what later generations called 野女 *Yeh Nü*.

403 A. 野女. YEH NÜ. (Wild women).

Syn. 野婆. *Yeh P'o*, PT.

The T'ang Meng Pao Wu Chih says they occur in Annam, going about in groups looking for husbands. They are white and are without clothes. Chou-Mi states that they have yellow hair which is bound around the head. They are barefooted and look like old women. They are all females. They travel up and down the hills and valleys very swiftly. Whenever they meet men they carry them off on their backs for sexual intercourse. The stronger men kill them and cut up the bodies to obtain from the kidney a translucent seal, 1 inch square like dark jade, bearing seal characters.

Li Shih-Chen says this is the same as a Hsing-Hsing. The seal is not unusual, because rats testes also have writing upon them in the seal character, and the Chih-Niao (bird) has a mirror image seal under its wing, all of which must be useful for something though no one knows what.

肉. *Jou*. **FLESH OF THE ORANGOUTANG.** KMN, 1073:

Sweet, saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

It cures drowsiness and hunger, and desire for a cereal diet, it allows an exhausted man to travel well, and old age will not tell on him.

404. 狒狒. FEI FEI. THE MOUPIN LANGUR. RHINOPITHECUS ROXELLANAE, Milne-Edwards. (Semnopithecus).

Shih Yi: ZN, 639, A baboon: G, 3491: SC, *Cynocephalus hamadryas* (the Arabian species): W, a hairy orang: Lydekker, RNH, all the true baboons are confined to Africa: Beddard adds Arabia: CP: Williams: H. O. Forbes, Handbook to the Primates, London, 1897, p. 139:

Syn. 鬮鬮 *Fei Fei*, 鼻羊 *Hsiao Yang*, 野人 *Yeh Jen*, 人熊 *Jen Hsiung*,
 PT: 土螻 *T'u Lou*, by Hsü-Shen, PT. 山都 *Shan Tu*, Kuo-P'u,
 PT. ZN. 639, Chacma: 山魈 *Shan Hsiao*, PT ZN, 639, *C. mormon*.
 犬頭猿 *Ch'üan T'ou Yüan*, ZN, 639.

Ch'en Ts'ang-Ch'i states that the Fei-Fei comes from the southwest border tribes. The Erh Ya says it is like a man with long hair floating about as it walks. It eats men.

The Shan-Hai-Ching says the *Hsiao Yang* has a human like face, with long lips and black hairy body. When it sees people it grins; and when it grins it draws its upper lip up over its eyes.

Kuo-P'u says that it is found also at Chiaochow (Kwangtung) and Nan K'ang-Chün (Kiangsi). It is over ten feet high. In the Sung dynasty the Liao tribe sent a pair as a gift to the throne. The Emperor enquired from the natives and it was said that this animal had a face like a man, a reddish pink colour, like a macaque, it had a tail and could talk like a man with the sound of a bird, and had knowledge of the times of life and death, terribly strong. The feet are turned backward and it has no knees. It just leans against things when it wishes to sleep. The hunters catch them by putting thick bamboos in their sleeves. The baboons catch them, and as they grin the hunter with freed arms nails the baboon's lip to the forehead. This eventually kills the animals. The fur is so long it can be made up into false hair for human use. The blood is a good shoe dye and embroidery dye. If men drink the blood it will cause them to see devils.

Li Shih-Chen says that it comes from West Szechuan, and the Chekiang mountains. People like to eat the paws. The Sha-Hsien hills of Fukien are also said to have them.

They are said to be like the men of K'unlun, hairy all over. They close their eyes and open their mouths when they see people. They are great smilers. They reside in the hills and live on crabs which they get by turning up the rocks. ZN, 638. The 山魈 *Shan Hsiao* is the mandrill, *C. mormor*, Wagn.

404 A. 山都. *SHAN TU*. **THE CHACMA. CYNOCEPHALUS PORCARIUS**, Schreb. ZN, 639:

Jen Fang in the Shu-I-Chi describes a sacred animal, like a man only it is over 20 feet tall, it is black with pink eyes and yellow head-hair. It sleeps in a big nest built in trees, three feet high and inside very smooth and glossy, very light in weight, the bed being made of bird's feathers. Two nests are built together the male above and the female below. It can change into a ghost, which is seldom seen by man.

404 B. 山獠. *SHAN HUI*.

Cited in the Pei-Shan-Ching as being like a dog with a human face, and which grins when it meets people.

404 C. 木客. MU K'E. MYTHOLOGICAL

A clawed human said to inhabit the southern mountains. In face, head, speech and funeral customs almost the same as ordinary people.

404 D. 山獠. SHAN HSIAO. The one footed mythological monster.

Numerous beings are described in the Shan Hai Ching. It says that people cannot see it therefore it seems utter nonsense to write so much about it, LSC.

肉. Jou. THE MEAT.

Nonpoisonous.

Smoked and cut into thin slices with the fat, heated and applied to scabies, it draws out the parasites.

405. 罔兩. WANG LIANG. A SPRITE, AN ELF, G, 12518: THE FOUR EYED NAIAD, W.

The Chou Li states: It lives on the livers of dead people. It is afraid of tigers and arbor vitae trees, hence people plant these tree and have stone tigers in their graveyards. The Shu Yi-Chi says that in the time of Ch'in-Shih-Huang there existed this four eyed naiad. Two eyed demons are called 魃 Ch'i.

406. 彭侯. P'ENG HOU. A DRYAD.

The spirit of wood, which is like a tailless black dog, edible. It is the metamorphosis of trees 1,000 years old. The flesh is eaten to keep away evil spirits and to make a man courageous.

Tree spirits are recorded from all over the world, see Frazer, The Golden Bough, Chapter IX, pp. 109-135, London, 1929.

407. 封. FENG. A NAIAD.

This refers to a class of peculiar organisms such as the sea cucumber or anemones to which were accredited supernatural qualities, based upon the supposition that they were spiritual beings. One description by Kuo P'u discusses an edible type, having two eyes, shaped like cow's liver. When bitten it grows back to its original shape and one can never completely consume it.

Cf. Frazer's accounts of water-spirits.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA.

V. MAN AS A MEDICINE.

Medicines of human origin have figured very prominently in the old pharmacopoeias of both the East and the West. The situation in Europe up to the end of the eighteenth century has been well summarized by Wootten, and shows a good deal of similarity to that prevailing in China in the sixteenth century at the time of Li Shih-Chen. Only one of the Chinese items are said to have come from Shen-Nung and five only from the Pieh Lu, two at least of which in similar form were quoted in Egyptian medicine of the 16th century B. C. More than one third (13) were added new in Li Shih-Chen's time, there is room for research into the origin of these relatively recent remedies which may reveal a new interchange of thought and practice between China and other civilizations. It may have been that the Arabs were in this matter a common source of both Chinese and European medicine.

The underlying theories which sustained the use of human remedies, find a great deal in common between the Arabs as represented by Avicenna, and China through the Pen Ts'ao. Body humors, vital air, the circulations, and numerous things are more clearly understood if an extended study be made of Avicenna or the old Europeans who based their writings on Arabic medicine.*

The various uses given were in many cases common throughout the civilized world, Lemery also recommended women's milk for inflamed eyes, feces were applied to sores, and the human skull, brain, blood, nails, and "all the parts of man", were used in sixteenth century Europe. Modern medicine may have removed the specifically human character of these remedies, but to-day people are feverishly examining every type of animal tissue for active principles, hormones, vitamins, and specific remedies for disease, and the discovery of adrenaline, insulin, theelin, menotoxin, and others, compels an open mind that one may reach beyond the unesthetic setting of the subject to things worth while.

PEN TS'AO KANG MU, CHAPTER 52.

PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY.

The one distinctive human remedy cited in Shen-Nung's Pen Ts'ao is the hair. Later generations of prescribers used the bones, flesh, gall and blood of human beings which Li Shih-Chen considered very lacking in good taste, however, in preparing his encyclopedic work upon medicines he considered it necessary to cite in detail everything in use which was proven beneficial and proper, where things were too bad they were omitted, and in other cases he has discussed their shortcomings and mistakes. Altogether 35 materials are discussed with two subheadings. It is not clear whether this refers to the subheadings under 'feces' and 'menstrual blood', or to two of the items under the 37 main headings, probably the latter.

*The Canon of Medicine of Avicenna, O. Cameron Gruner, London, 1930.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

The original references are as follows:—

- 1 material from Shen Nung's Pen Ts'ao, commentary by T'ao Hung-Ching, Liang dyn.
- 5 materials from Ming-Yi-Pieh-Lu, by T'ao Hung-Ching, Liang.
- 1 material from T'ang Pen Ts'ao, by Su Kung, T'ang.
- 8 materials from Pen Ts'ao Shih-Yi, by Ch'en Ts'ang Ch'i, T'ang
- 2 materials from Jih-Hua Pen Ts'ao, by Jen Ta-Ming, Sung.
- 1 material from K'ai-Pao Pen Ts'ao, by Ma-Chih, Sung.
- 4 materials from Chia-Yu Pen Ts'ao, by Chang Yü-Hsi, Sung.
- 1 material from Cheng-Lei Pen Ts'ao, by T'ang Shen-Wei, Sung.
- 1 material from Pen Ts'ao Meng-Ch'uan, by Ch'en Chia-Mo, Ming.
- 13 materials new, Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu, by Li Shih-Chen, Ming.

SECONDARY REFERENCES.

- Wu P'u Pen Ts'ao, Wei dynasty. Bret. I. 40.
- Li Tang Chih Yao Lu, Wei dynasty. Bret. I. 40.
- Lei Hsiao, (Lei Kung) P'ao Chih Lun, Sung dynasty. Bret. I. 41.
- Hsü Chih Ts'ai's Yao Tui, Ch'i dynasty. Bret. I. 40.
- Ssu Su-Mo's Ch'ien Chin Shih Chih, T'ang dynasty. Bret. I. 43.
- Chen-Ch'uan's Yao-Hsing-Pen-Ts'ao, T'ang dynasty. Bret. I. 44.
- Meng-Hsin's Shih-Liao Pen-Ts'ao, T'ang dynasty. Bret. I. 45.
- Han Pao-Sheng's Ch'ung Chu, Shu Kuo. Bret. I. 46.
- K'ou Tsung-Shih, Pen Ts'ao Yen-Yi, Sung. A.D. 1115, Bret. I. 48.
- Chu Chen-Hung, Pen Ts'ao Pu-Yi, 14th century. Bret. I. 49.
- Wang-Chi, Pen-Ts'ao Hui-Pien, Ming dynasty. Bret. I. 54.

From which are taken 67 prescriptions which with 220 new ones make a total of 287 standard remedies in this chapter.

BERNARD E. READ

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 52, Man No. 1.

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
408	髮鬢	Fa Pei	Boy's hair.
409	亂髮	Luan Fa	Fallen hair from the head.
410	頭垢	T'ou Kou	Human dandruff.
411	耳塞	Er Sai	Human ear wax.
412	膝垢	Hsi Kou	Human knee dirt.
413	爪甲	Chao Chia	Human finger and toe nails.
414	牙齒	Ya Ch'ih	Human teeth.
415	人屎	Jen Shih	Human feces.
416	小兒胎屎	Hsiao Er T'ai Shih	Human meconium.
417	人尿	Jen Sui	Human urine.
418	溺白塗	Ni Pai Hsi	Human urinary sediments.
419	秋石	Ch'iu Shih	Human urea.
420	淋石	Lin Shih	Human stone in bladder.
421	癖石	P'i Shih	Human gall-stones.
422	乳汁	Ju Chih	Human milk.
423	婦人月水	Fu Jen Yüeh Shui	Human menstrual blood.
424	人血	Jen Hsüeh	Human blood (M & F).
425	人精	Jen Ching	Human semen.
426	口津唾	K'ou Chin T'u	Human saliva, G.
427	齒塗	Ch'ih Hsi	Human tartar.
428	人汗	Jen Han	Human perspiration.
429	眼淚	Yen Lei	Human tears.
430	人氣	Jen Ch'i	Human breath.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

PEN TS'AO KANG MU

Chapter 52, Man No. 1. (Continued)

No.	Chinese	Roman.	English
431	人魄	Jen P'o	Human anima (ghost).
432	髭鬚	T'zu Hsü	Human moustache and whiskers.
433	陰毛	Yin Mao	Human pubic hair (M & F).
434	人骨	Jen Ku	Human bones.
435	天靈蓋	T'ien Ling Kai	Human cranium (skull).
436	人胞	Jen Pao	Human placenta.
437	胞衣水	Pao Yi Shui	Human old liquified placenta.
438	初生臍帶	Ch'u Sheng Ch'i Tai	Human umbilical cord.
439	人勢	Jen Shih	Human penis.
440	人膽	Jen Tan	Human bile.
441	人肉	Jen Jou	Human flesh.
442	木乃伊	Mu Nai Yi	Human mummy confection.
443	方民	Fang Min	Man and Climate.
444	人傀	Jen K'uei	Human monstrosities.

408. 髮髮. FA PEI. HUMAN HAIR, cut from youths under 20 years old.

Shen-Nung: JPK, 182: G, 3375:

Syn. 頭髮 *T'ou Fa*, PT: 鬚 *Tsung*, 髮鬚 *Pei T'i*, PT:

This differs from the next heading in being cut hair. "Luan Fa" is hair taken from combs and brushes, which has fallen out of the head. Cut hair from an adult is called 髡 *K'un*, that from children is called T'i 髡. Similar to the west the prisoners used to have the head shaved. It is taken from lads under 20 years old with healthy complexions and who have never had an illness, from the center of the crown of the head. It is washed with soap bean water, sundried, put in a pot and ashed.

Bitter, warming, nonpoisonous.

Diuretic, styptic.

Given for jaundice, for unexpelled placenta, stone in the bladder, for nervousness in children, colic, and convulsive fevers in children, bloody dysentery, suppurating knife wounds.

For constipation.

409. 亂髮. LUAN FA. HUMAN HAIR, the loose strands in combs and brushes.

Pieh-Lu: Europe A.D., 1759, WAC: SK, 95 burnt hair:

Syn. 血餘 *Hsüeh Yü*, 人退 *Jen T'ui*, PT:

髮 *Fa* refers to hair on the top of the head, and is connected with the 足少陰 *Tsu-Shao-Yin* part of the circulation. 鬚 *Pin* refers to side whiskers considered as being part of the 手足少陽 *Shou-Tsu-Shao-Yang*. 眉 *Mei* refers to the eyebrows, of the 手足陽明 *Shou-Tsu-Yang-Ming*. 髭 *T'zu* refers to the moustache of the 手陽明 *Shou-Yang-Ming* circulation. 鬚 *Hsü* refers to the beard of the 足少陰陽明 *Tsu-Shao-Yin-Yang-Ming*. Hair on the sides of the cheeks is 髯 *Jan*. When the blood and vitality is good, the hair is long and good looking. If the blood is lacking the hair is short. If the vitality is poor and the blood plentiful it is short and ugly. If the blood and vitality are both weak hair will not grow at all. Hot blooded people have golden red hair, when the vitality is low the hair becomes white. The *Su Wen* says that the strength of the testes is exhibited in the hair. Wang Ping explains this by saying that the testes generate the marrow, and the brain is the ocean into which all of the marrow runs, and the hair is the efflorescence of the brain. When there is lack of brains the hair is deficient. Hua-Shou relates the hair to the circulation, and says that the hair is the flower of the testes because, water flows down from lofty springs, hair is a product of a full blooded system, and blood is a fluid substance, (which circulates down to the testes). Hence the name 血餘 *Hsüeh Yü*. Yeh Shih-Chieh in the *Ts'ao Mu Tzu* says that the beard is the outgrowth of abundant semen, the growth of

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

the eyebrows is related to the vitality (氣), and the head hair is from the blood.

Liu-An said that if people want to stop the hair falling out they should comb it all over a thousand times. (This undoubtedly would improve the circulation of the scalp.)

Bitter, slightly warming, nonpoisonous. Ashed.

For coughs, gonorrhoea, retention of urine and feces, infantile convulsions. The ash blown into the nose immediately stops epistaxis. For dysentery, a circulatory stimulant. For eczema in children, erythrema. In infants for sores on the navel, swollen tongue, mouth ulcers, and constant crying. For pulmonary tuberculosis with hematemesis, bleeding gums, bloody sputum. For all kinds of hemorrhages. Hematuria, blood in feces, menorrhagia, amenorrhoea. For jaundice in women caused by cold baths after sexual intercourse, for jaundice with hematuria, cholera, tetanus. To prevent grey hair. For running ears, centipede bites, and many kinds of ulcers, and leprosy.

410. 頭垢. *T'OU KOU*. **DANDRUFF.**

Syn. 百齒霜 *Po Ch'ih Shuang*.

Floated on water it is too oily to sink. Best taken from a fat man.

Saline, bitter, warming, poisonous.

For gonorrhoea with retention of urine, hiccough, toxemia from worms, and mushroom poisoning. For remittent fever, relapse from typhoid fever, cholera in infants. For various kinds of devil possession. For breast abscess, foot sores on women. For poisoning from meat from animals that have died, hydrophobia, snake bite, centipede bites, applied to hornet and various insect bites. Applied to conjunctivitis, etc.

411. 耳塞. *ERH SAI*. **EAR WAX. CERUMEN.**

Jih-Hua: Europe 1759 A. D. WAC: JPK, 184:

Syn. 耳垢 *Erh Kou*, 腦膏 *Nao Kao*, 泥丸脂 *Ni Wan Chih*, PT:

The organs of generation ventilate through the ear. The channel passes through the spleen up the right side of the body. When the ear is full of wax it acts like a stopper 塞 *Sai*, hence the term "*Erh Sai*".

Saline, bitter, warming and poisonous.

For delirium, and alcoholism. Applied to all kinds of snake and insect bites. Applied to tetanus wounds, all kinds of eye sickness, and ulcers. Given to babies to stop night crying.

412. 膝頭垢. *HSI T'OU KOU*. **KNEE DIRT.**

Kang Mu.

Wrapped in cotton, ashed, and applied to ulcers on the lips.

413. 爪甲. CHAO CHIA. NAILS OF THE FINGERS AND TOES.

Kang Mu: Europe 1759 A. D.: WAC: JPK, 182:

Syn. 筋退 *Chin T'ui*, PT: 指甲 *Chih Chia*, CP:

The nails are an outgrowth of excessive tendon tissue, and are an external index of the state of the gall-bladder. (The ideas which follow refer to the organ, to the bile, or even a person's temperament). The Ling Shu Ching says that thick yellow nails indicate a thick 膽 *Tan*....strong dark nails indicate a quick 膽 *Tan*....soft red nails indicate a gentle nature....coarse black nails indicate a solid 膽 *Tan*.

Sweet, saline and nonpoisonous.

Applied in fine powder to epistaxis. To hasten expulsion of the placenta. Diuretic. For hematuria, tetanus, and growths over the eye.

For beri-beri, sexual weakness, hematuria in pregnant women, swollen belly in children, gonorrhoea. Powdered to apply to fistula. Applied to remove thorns from the skin and foreign bodies from the eye. Applied for all kinds of eye sickness including growths in the eye. For chronic discharge of blood in feces.

414. 牙齒. YA CH'IH HUMAN TEETH.

Jih-Hua: PH. Annam, 61: JR, 135:

The molars are called *Ya*, the incisors are called *Ch'ih*. The testes control the bones, and teeth are an outgrowth of bone tissue.

Girls cut their first teeth at 7 months. At the age of 7 years their teeth fall out. At 21 puberty is complete and the wisdom teeth 眞牙, *Chen Ya* are formed. At 49 the reproductive powers wane, the teeth decay and the hair turns grey. Boys cut their first teeth at 8 months, at 8 years the new ones come, at 24 puberty is complete and the wisdom teeth grow, at 64 the reproductive powers wane, the teeth decay and the hair falls out.

Ch'ien-Yi said that small children show periodic changes in dentition like plants with their successive stages of flowering, there ought to be 36 teeth, when there is less it is because some periods have been missed.

Sweet, saline, warming, poisonous.

Removes weakness, for malaria, toxemia from worms, non-suppurating breast abscess, and smallpox in the eruptive stage.

415. 人屎. JEN SHIH. HUMAN FECES.

Pieh-Lu: London A. D. 1677, WAC: JPK, 184:

Syn. 人糞 *Jen Fen*, PT: 大便 *Ta Pien*, PT:

The character for feces is made from 'rice' and a 'corpse', because rice was the chief article of diet.

Bitter, cooling, and nonpoisonous.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

For epidemic fevers, incoördinated gait, as an antidote to poisons, given in the form of a soup made from the dried and powdered material.

Given with water for typhoid. Applied to boils, in one day they will burst. For carbuncles and smallpox sores which are undeveloped. For osteomyelitis.

SUBHEADING.

人中黃. *Jen Chung Huang*. **CLEAR LIQUID FECES**. DH, Malay, 406: CMC, 149 金汁 Chin Chih: CMC, 552: Annam PH, 59: JR, 137: Syn. 糞清 Fen Ch'ing, 黃龍湯 Huang Lung T'ang, 還元水 Huan Yüan Shui, PT.

Various methods of preparation are given.

According to Chen Heng a bamboo cylinder is taken and filled with powdered liquorice. The two ends are closed and the tube is placed in a vat of liquid feces from the 12th month till spring. It is then taken out and dried in the shade. The inside powder dried is used as a medicine and called '*Jen Chung Huang*'. Wang-Chi said a better preparation was made by filtering liquid feces through cloth and palm bark. The filtrate put in a clean jar and buried in the ground for 1 year produces a clear water-white odorless fluid. The longer the time it is in the ground the better. T'ao Hung-Ching recommended a preparation of feces which was called "Huang Lung T'ang" which was simply the feces stored in a jar for 1 year until liquified, for treating plague, a cure for cases in extremis. Ta-Ming described a preparation made from the clear fecal liquid in which was macerated soap beans and sugar cane, used for epidemic fevers, this was also called "Jen Chung Huang". Ta-Ming also describes a preparation "Fen Ch'ing", made by taking a fresh bamboo in the 12th moon, and placing it in a jar of liquid feces, the liquid which penetrates to the inside of the bamboo was used for treating infectious fevers.

General uses. For epidemic fevers, delirious fevers, mushroom poisoning, and abscesses. Osteomyelitis, hematemesis, epistaxis, regurgitation. For unerupted smallpox. Antiphlegmatic. The smell will induce insects to crawl out of any of the body orifices and relieve irritation. The ash is applied to genital sores in children, prolapse of the uterus after childbirth is best treated by dosing with roasted feces.

Knife wounds in the abdomen with extrusion of the bowel should be dressed with the dried powdered material.

Bleeding needle wounds are dressed with the ash. Snake bite should have a thick dressing of feces. It is an antidote internally to all kinds of poisoning, either in the form of ash, or the clear liquid feces is given.

416. 小兒胎屎. *HSIAO ERH T'AI SHIH*. **MECONIUM**.

Li Shih-Chen:

For removing tattoo marks apply for one month. For evil sores, nasal polypi and necrotic wounds. Ashed and mixed with wax and lard it is applied to alopecia in children.

417. 人尿. JEN SUI. URINE, from an unmarried boy.

Pieh-Lu: Papyrus Ebers BC. 1,600: London A.D. 1677 WAC: PH, 59
 Annam: JR, 453, Emise au milieu de la miction: JPK, 184:

Syn. 溺 Ni, PT: 洩 Sou: 小便 Hsiao Pien: 輪迴酒 Lun Hui Chiu,
 還元湯 Huan Yüan T'ang, PT:

The last two names are secret professional titles.

After drinking, the water enters the stomach from which it circulates to the spleen. From the spleen it goes to the lungs. This leads to the circulation of the bladder channels. At the 'Caput coli' the solid waste enters the large bowel and the liquids dialyze into the urinary bladder. The bladder is the 'waterways official', and the storehouse of the secretions. Vital changes are effected before these again circulate through the body. (This appears to include the combined functions of the bladder and kidneys, and possibly the adrenals). According to the Yin-Yang-Ying-Hsiang the clear positive principles rise to heaven and the impure negative elements enter the ground. So the water vapour rises from earth to heaven and the gaseous metabolism goes on through the upper body orifices (nose and mouth), and the rain descends to earth like the impure negative material which flows down through the lower body orifices.

Saline, cooling, nonpoisonous.

For feverish chill, and violent headache For chronic cough and deafness It clarifies the vision, benefits the hearing, and improves the skin. It is laxative, anthelmintic, and styptic. It strengthens the lungs, cures thirst, blood vomiting and epistaxis. It is given for retained placenta, for dog, snake and insect bites. It is a sexual tonic. For malaria, sunstroke and various poisonings. For bleeding gums.

Boy's urine is given for fever with a sore throat. Concentrated urine from a 3 year old boy is given with honey for osteomyelitis. A cupful of urine from a public latrine is to be given secretly to a diabetic Five pints are taken for prolonged bleeding from knife wounds. For epilepsy of 30 years standing. Two pints are taken to expel a dead foetus. For swellings and dark wounds from various injuries. Painful conjunctivitis may be washed with the patients own urine. Fetid perspiration under the armpits is washed several times daily with the patient's urine, fistula is similarly treated.

418. 溺白堊 NI PAI NING (HSI). URINARY SEDIMENTS.

T'ang Pen Ts'ao: G: CMC, 553: JPK, 186:

Syn. 人中白 Jen Chung Pai, PT:

The material which precipitates out of the urine is air dried, and roasted once on an earthenware tile.

It acts by excreting through the urine, relieving the congestion of the liver, kidney (here rendered as bladder) and of the three areas of metabolism

(三焦): chest (lungs), abdomen (liver and bowels), and pelvis (bladder). It can excrete bad humours and dissolve stagnant blood. It takes the fire out of swellings.

Saline, bland, nonpoisonous.

Given internally to stop all kinds of hemorrhages. For headache, ascites, cholera in children, nasal polypi, and smallpox. Applied to mouth sores, and mouth cancer.

419. 秋石. **CH'IU SHIH.** *UREA.*

Meng-Ch'uan: A. D. 1567: W: G, 2302: CMC, 205:

Syn. 秋冰 *Ch'iu Ping*, PT:

The old Taoist Huai-Nan-Tzu by his alchemy made this and called it the 'autumn stone' because it was white, the colour of autumn and the substance was as strong as stone. In Li Shih-Chen's time people used the urinary sediments 人中白 *Jen Chung Pai* to make it. The material was called 秋冰 *Ch'iu Ping*, when it had been purified by recrystallization like the purification of sea salt. The old druggists used to make a spurious preparation by roasting salt.

Ch'en Chia-Mo's account says that the urine of young boys was collected in the autumn into earthenware jars. To each jar was added seven drachms of plaster of Paris, and after stirring with mulberry sticks, it was allowed to settle and decanted. The clear fluid was treated thus two or three times over. The precipitated material was then placed in a jar, and washed several times with pure autumn dew water to free it from impurities and to remove the saline taste. It is then filtered through paper and the filtrate concentrated by standing in the sun. The upper clean crystals are separated and used. The ancients made a clear distinction between the urea from male and female urines, men using that made from a virgin and women used boy's urea, but in the 16th century neither the sex nor the season was considered to have any effect on the product, moreover they concentrated it over a fire. Ch'en Chia-Mo considered it a mistake to ignore the Yin-Yang theory. The sundried material was 'Yin' and the fired material was 'Yang', hence the latter method changed a cooling drug into a heating one, which was improper and bad for the patient.

The ancients used urine and urinary sediments as a circulatory stimulant, as a sedative to the genito-urinary organs, as an anthelmintic and a general antidote to poisons. Seeing that aristocratic people disliked this dirty method of treatment the druggists prepared urea. The "So Sui Lu" states that the heating and purifying methods produce a heating substance which is taken by lascivious persons as an aphrodisiac, which leads to overindulgence sexually. This pseudo-stimulant causes a drying up of the semen and the individual develops 'thirst disease' if the drug be taken frequently. Worse still some prescriptions add other stimulants to produce unnatural excitement, this is all

very well for the treatment of impotent people but it has evil effects upon highly sexed individuals. In cases of gonorrhoea, the semen is lacking but there is great inflammation, and the individual's urine becomes concentrated and there develops gravel in the bladder and urinary calculi.

Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

A health restorative. A tonic to the blood, bone and semen.

For weakness, nocturnal emissions, enuresis, and gonorrhoea, G, and leucorrhoea. It nourishes the kidney and pubic area, rectifying disorders of the genito-urinary tract, quietening the viscera, and acting as a sedative to the general metabolism. It takes away phlegm, and allays osteomyelitis. It brightens the eyes, quietens the mind and prolongs old age. One drachm is good for nausea and vomiting.

420. 淋石. LIN SHIH. URINARY CALCULI.

Sung Chia-Yu: G, 9964: London A. D. 1677 WAC:

Syn. 石癩 *Shih Lin*, W:

This was formerly classed in the mineral section of the Pen Ts'ao.

Ch'en Ts'ang-Ch'i says it is the small stones excreted in the urine of patients suffering from stone in the bladder. Li Shih-Chen says it is formed from the concentrated semen of lascivious people who lacking opportunities for sexual intercourse are overcome by their own heat. The formation of the stone in the bladder is said to be exactly like the crystallization of salt from urine, the formation of fur in a kettle, or the purification of urea from urine. In discussing the latter an opposite theory is given, namely that excessive sexual intercourse with the subsequent lack of water to control or balance the metabolism caused the formation of stones or gravel.

Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

For regurgitation and vomiting of food. For the treatment of stone in the bladder.

421. 癰石. P'I SHIH. GALL-STONES.

Li Shih-Chen: London, 1677 A. D. WAC:

When people have morbid appetites or suffer from mania of any kind the humors of the body become concentrated and form stones. Meteorites, gravel, urinary calculi, and cranial tumors of priests are all formed by the gathering together and crystallizing out of the essence of things. As the Ko Wu Lun expressed it, stones are the nuclei (or kernels) of gases. Inanimate things like jade or even trees which have no feelings change into stone, and animate things like fish, serpents, shrimps and crabs become fossilized. There is a record of a chaste woman who went up a hill looking for her husband who turned into stone, her utter devotion and single minded purpose became so intense that it froze into a state of no feeling whatever. (This suggests

the story of Lot's wife). A Sung dynasty record tells of a quarry man who fell into a quarry and was lost three years, when he was at last got out he was still alive but a blast of wind turned him into stone, the constant breathing of the stone vapours changed him into a petrified man. Hence the whole body being petrified, the same principle can be seen to operate in petrifying the heart of a person overcome with an inordinate desire for one thing. The Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu cites various other fables already given under Cha Ta, No. 338, to try and establish the idea that gall-stones are formed in the heart, the ancients did not recognize their origin in the gall-bladder. With such total opposition to post mortem examination this is only natural, but one wonders how they ever obtained the material used as a medicine.

For constipation and hiccough.

422. 乳汁. *JU CHIH*. HUMAN MILK.

Pieh-Lu: Papyrus Ebers BC. 1500: London A. D. 1677 WAC: JPK, 184 figure, 20 Pfenning a pint in Shanghai: KMN, Hindu, p. 1110, for the eye and chest: JR Annam, 136:

Syn. 孀汁 *Nai Chih*, PT: 仙人酒 *Hsien Jen Chiu*, PT:

The character *Ju* is composed of 孚 *Fu* meaning confidence in or certainty, and 化 *Hua* to change or generate, implying that a child depends upon the normal mother to generate milk, hence the old pharmacists created fanciful names such as 生人血 *Sheng Jen Hsieh* and 白硃砂 *Pai Chu Sha*. Milk is said to be formed from female blood in the spleen and stomach and is limited in its distribution to the 衝 *Ch'ung* and 任 *Jen* parts of the circulation. When nonpregnant it descends to form the menstrual fluid, during pregnancy it is retained in the body to nourish the foetus, as soon as the child is born the red fluid changes to white and ascends to form milk, this is one of the most mysterious natural phenomena in creation. Those who practise black art and sorcery use corrupt methods to make young virgins yield milk, changing the menstrual fluid into a lacteal secretion. Such deceptions are subject to the utmost rigor of the law and are discredited by decent people.

The milk used in medicine is from a mother without sickness after delivery of her firstborn son. (Same as in ancient Egypt.) It must be white and thick. If it be yellow, pink, watery, stinking, or dirty like saliva it must not be used.

忌孀 *Chi Nai* is milk secreted during a second pregnancy. It is considered very poisonous to children, causing them to vomit and defecate, and to develop serious illness.

The character of the milk depends on the habits and food of the mother. A quiet tempered person who eats mild foods will generate normal bland milk, but hot tempered people who take spicy foods and alcoholic drink or who are suffering from fever, will have milk that is overheating and injurious. Milk should be taken fresh, whilst it is warm, or dried milk powder can be added to

other drugs. The Sung dynasty records tell of a man who recovered from chronic tuberculosis by taking women's milk, and another man lived to 240 years by taking the milk of the wives of his great grandchildren.

Milk is said to benefit the heart action and to be a tonic to the brain, it will cure diabetes insipidus and inflammatory diseases.

The milk drawn into the mouth should be mixed thoroughly with the saliva, the nose should be stopped up with paper, after holding the breath the air in the nose should be slowly drawn through the nasal passages and the milk very slowly swallowed down. Five to seven mouthfuls are enough for one dose. If taken straight down it is of no greater benefit than ordinary junket from cow's milk.

Sweet, saline, not heating, nonpoisonous.

A tonic to the viscera, it makes one fat and sleek. For conjunctivitis with pain, redness, and lachrymation (trachoma) An *old* copper coin, is rubbed in milk in a copper container until a decided colour develops. This is then dropped into the eye daily. Or coptis root is boiled in the milk.

With salted beans for beef poisoning, and cow's liver poisoning. With bird's excreta to cure fleshy growths in the eye.

A pint of the fermented preparation has a marked rejuvenating effect on dried up old men. For tuberculosis, apoplexy, fainting fits, aphonia, amenorrhoea, for anuria in the newborn given with onion, given with salt and bezoar for regurgitation in the newborn. Applied with bread to draw the pus from an abscess. Applied with t'ung oil to leg abscesses.

423. 婦人月水. *FU JEN YÜEH SHUI*. **MENSTRUAL BLOOD.**

Sung Chia-Yu: G, 13768: JPK, 193:

Syn. 月經 *Yüeh Ching*, PT, W; 天癸 *T'ien Kuei*, PT, W; 紅鉛 *Hung Ch'ien*, PT; 月信 *Yüeh Hsin*, PT, W:

Woman is "Yin" 陰 in character, and is controlled by the circulation, because the blood is defined as the essence of the Yin principle. The blood has its changes like the phases of the moon and the tides of the ocean, every lunar month there is a menstrual flow hence the various Chinese names which include the word *Yüeh*, and it is such a regular phenomenon that it has been termed 月信 *Yüeh Hsin*. The term *T'ien Kuei*—the heavenly waters—link up the phenomenon with old cosmology when all was dark and void and waters covered the earth, and out of those waters was born the earth. The term *Hung Ch'ien*, the first flow of menstrual blood, is from the black arts, Li Shih-Chen says it is a fallacious name. When sick the regular menstruation may be delayed, or hastened or it may stop. Apart from sickness there are other recognized characters. *Ni Hsing* is the hemoptosis, epistaxis, or flowing of blood from the eyes or ears, which is a contrary tide to the menstrual blood. 居經 *Chi Ching* or 按季 *An Chi* is the term for menstruation which occurs once only in three months, and some people only menstruate once a year, termed 避年 *Pi Nien*. 暗經 *An Ching* refers to the total absence of menstrea-

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

tion in a person who becomes pregnant. When the monthly flow continues right through pregnancy it is called 盛胎 *Sheng T'ai* or 垢胎 *Kou T'ai*. A sudden flooding after several months of pregnancy which does not disturb the foetus is called 漏胎 *Lou T'ai*.

Puberty commences at 14 (2 times 7) years of age (13 years by foreign reckoning), and at 49 (7 times 7) menstruation ceases. There are some persons who commence at 12 or 13 years of age and become pregnant, and menstruation may continue to 50 or 60. In the Liao dynasty the wife of Chi P'u who was over 60 gave birth to triplets, 2 boys and 1 girl, which was a very unusual thing.

At the onset of menstruation the odour drives away the male. On account of its impurity it weakens the virility and will cause sickness in the male. People preparing drug extracts and pharmaceuticals, children developing smallpox, priests under ordination, Taoists during their exercises, all keep away from a menstruating woman. In Funan Kuo they have magic to prevent knives from cutting people, but if menstrual blood be smeared on the blade it will kill a person. There is very definite evidence to show that these secretions destroy the vitality of a person. Li Shih-Chen considers the Taoist prescriptions and uses of this drug too disreputable to be noticed.

Saline, bland, nonpoisonous.

Used as an antidote to arrow poison, and for female weaknesses.

SUBHEADING.

423A. 月經衣 *Yüeh Ching Yi*. **THE MENSTRUAL CLOTH.**

Ashed, given for sexual weakness in the male after a bout of fever. The ash is given to women for jaundice. For cholera. The blood is used as a base for applying elm bark and other drugs to boils on the back. Given with indigo for convulsions in children. That from a virgin is ashed and applied to sores on the penis. It is administered with clear feces as an antidote to the copper poison used on the arrows of the barbarians. The ash is given to absorb extravasated blood from wounds. It is given as an antidote to infections from animal bites and wounds.

424. 人血. *JEN HSÜEH*. **HUMAN BLOOD.**

Shih-Yi: Europe A. D. 1759 WAC: JPK, 185:

Blood is the fluid tissue of the body. It is formed from the solid and liquid foods which are eaten and enter the belly, and by digestion, absorption and metabolism are mysteriously transformed. The blood passes into the liver which overflows into the abdomen and to the peripheral organs. In the abdomen the lymph is made red and passes to the various vessels and nourishes the whole body and is then termed 血 *Hsüeh* = blood, which is defined as 營氣 *Ying Ch'i*, "the transporter of the vital air, or pneuma". Although blood and pneuma are different in name, their function is similar. The serum is the transporting substance, and the solid material (the cells) is the vitalizing part. The serum migrates to the "Yin" areas, and the cells circulate in the "Yang".

(This has various interpretations, modern anatomy has an obvious correlation, but the ancients had their own ideas). The pneuma in the blood is the controller of combustion (respiratory metabolism), and the blood is the fluid transporter. While the blood has a basis of water it must receive energy before it is of use, hence it is said that the pneuma controls the circulation. If the pneuma (respiration metabolism) increases, the circulation increases, and vice versa, and if the combustion is greater, the pulse is more rapid. "When the combustion is active the blood is black." When infections (邪) or disturbing influences effect the "Yang" organs, (stomach, intestines, gall-bladder, urinary bladder and the peritoneum) there is vomiting, when the "Yin" organs (heart, liver, kidneys, lungs and spleen) are affected there is diarrhoea and urination.

The blood is formed in the spleen, it fills the heart, is stored in the liver, is circulated through the lungs, and passes to the kidneys where it is purified. The Taoists can purify it into a white fluid by taking out the "Yin" and leaving the pure "Yang" principle. The loyal subject Ch'ang-Hung (who gave up his life when his emperor died) had his blood turn to jade. If blood enters the ground, after many years it turns to phosphorus, which shows how living a thing it is.

Saline, bland, poisonous.

Li Shih-Chen says that the numerous prescriptions for human blood are improper and impractical. The originators of these ideas are inhuman fellows who probably beget no children. People who follow such nefarious methods, or those who drink human blood mixed with wine should be ignored for God himself will punish them. A few prescriptions founded on sound principles are given for the treatment of:—

For emaciating sicknesses when the skin dries and peels off. For hydrophobia and feverish chills. For prolonged hematemesis, epistaxis, and internal hemorrhage from knife wounds. For blood in the milk of the nursing mother. Applied to the bleeding feet of children to draw out sharp gravel from the wound. After needling applied to eye tumours in children.

425. 人精. *JEN CHING*. **HUMAN SEMEN.**

Sung Chia-Yu: Papyrus Ebers, B. C. 1500: JPK, 187:

The essential principle of the blood undergoes changes to form semen which is secreted at the "Gate of life." At the age of sixteen (2×8) there is a full secretion of semen, which amounts to one and six tenths pints of fluid. Nourished it will increase to three pints. Outraged it weakens and there will be less than one pint. The formation of semen is dependant upon a proper supply of blood and pneuma. Pao Ching-Hsiang has explained how the brain controls the "vitalized air". Where there is decision there follows an impulse or feeling (or pneuma). The emotions cause the formation of secretions. Hence appetite, the coveting of food, causes salivation, sadness causes tears, shame causes perspiration, and sexual desire causes the secretion of semen.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

As in old Egyptian medicine reference is made to both male and female semen.

Sweet and warming.

With falcon excreta it will remove scars. Applied to cuts and burns. For face and body pimples. Applied to scrophulous glands.

426. 口津唾 K'OU CHIN T'O. HUMAN SALIVA.

Kang-Mu: G, 11391: London A. D. 1677 WAC: JPK, 184:

Syn. 靈液 *Ling Yeh*, PT, 神水 *Shen Shui*, PT, 金漿 *Chin Chiang*, PT, 醴泉 *Li Ch'üan*, PT.

There are four ducts below the tongue. Two connect with the heart (circulation) and two connect with the secretion of the kidney (adrenal secretion), the former ducts generate 神水 *Shen Shui*, the latter the 靈液 *Ling Yeh*. (It is interesting that the ancient Chinese recognized two different kinds of salivary secretion.) The other names are Taoist in origin.

Constant expectoration is weakening, causing lung disease and dryness of the skin. Long range expectoration is not as good as close range, it is better not to spit at all.

During an illness the circulation between the heart and the kidney is stopped, the kidney secretion stops and saliva dries up and the pneuma is reduced to a low level.

Ch'in Yüeh-Jen in the Nan-Ching explains how the adrenal, i. e. kidney, (this might be translated testicular secretion) controls the five secretions, it enters the liver to cause lachrymation, it enters the lungs to cause nasal secretion, it enters the spleen to cause watery saliva secretion, to the heart to produce perspiration, and it goes directly to form the thick saliva.

There is an interesting explanation of how devils fear being spit upon, and the ancient association of this behaviour with degraded objects. Nightmare which is considered to be due to attack by devils is treated by quietly spitting in the face of the sufferer and biting the heels and base of the finger nails.

Sweet, saline, nonpoisonous, bland.

Applied to swollen ulcers, scabies, pimply skin, and ringworm. It clarifies the vision, removes false eye membranes, dissolves swellings and counteracts mercury poisoning. Applied below arms to counteract fetid perspiration. Snake bite should first be washed with urine then apply saliva. For swellings of the hands or feet, and whitlows.

427. 齒垢. CH'IH CHIN (HSI). THE TARTAR OF HUMAN TEETH.

Sung Chia-Yu:

Syn. 齒垢 *Ch'ih Kou*,

Saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

Applied to arrow wounds, to remove foreign bodies which have pierced the skin Applied to snake and wasp bite.

428. 人汗. JEN HAN. HUMAN PERSPIRATION.

Li Shih-Chen: G, 3784;

It comes from the heart. In the vessels it is blood, secreted outside it is sweat. Hence the saying if there be excessive perspiration there is no blood, and taking away the blood (as by hemorrhage) stops sweating.

Saline and poisonous.

If it enters the food and is eaten it will cause toxic boils.

429. 眼淚. YEN LEI. HUMAN TEARS.

Kang Mu: G, 6856:

Tears are a secretion from the liver, and the lymph from the whole of the viscera rises and flows to the eyes. The emotions, sadness and laughter or a cough stimulates the heart, and the viscera are moved which causes the vessels of the "Tsung" circulation to expand and the lymph rises. Tears run off just like drops from a distillation flask.

Saline and poisonous.

The tears of a crying mother will cause cataract if they enter the eye of the child.

430. 人氣. JEN CH'I. HUMAN BREATH.

Kang-Mu: G, 1064, the vivifying principle of Chinese cosmogony, the vital fluid, temper, breath, vapour, influence. Cf. Avicenna, 136:

People who suffer from cold and weakness in the lower extremities should be treated daily by having young boys and girls breathe into the patients navel (through the clothing). People with arthritis or rheumatism should have a succession of people keep on this breathing on to the joints affected, after a good time the circulation is restored thoroughly. In epistaxis or hemorrhages from knife wounds breathing on to the wound will eventually stop the flow of blood.

The vital air is the like a fire, it is the same as the Taoist's 元陽 *Yüan Yang*. Without it nothing in the world can live and people cannot survive. Hence for old men or weak men the best thing is to sleep with a young girl fourteen years of age and receive the benefit of her breath, but there must be no sexual intercourse which would rob the person of the benefit received. The sorcerers practise a special art called 接補 *Chieh Pu*, in which a young girl breathes into the nostrils, the navel and the penis of the patient, the operator must be expert else they are likely to become ill themselves.

The famous Taoist, Pao P'u Tze said, man is in the air and the air is in man. He who can breathe expertly improves the health of his internal organs and keeps away evil influences from the outside. Live air is obtainable from midnight to midday. From midday to midnight the air is dead. Live air should be inhaled as much as possible, and exhaled less, the mouth being closed

and while holding the breath one should count starting with 25 and working up to 99, afterwards slowly and noiselessly exhaling the air. With perfect practice one can hold the breath while one counts a thousand, when one starts the life of an immortal (the seed of immortality is sown). It is beneficial if in spring one breathes the fresh air facing the east, in summer the rosy air of the south, in autumn the clear air of the west, and in winter the dark vapours of the north, at the beginning of the seasons one breathes the yellow vapours of the central position. (In Peiping the present Central Park used to be a Temple of Agriculture, in which to-day the central edifice stands with the four sides, tiled with green, red, white and black with yellow earth in the middle, arranged in the order mentioned.)

A man perfected in breathing ritual is neither hungry nor thirsty, he is very longlived, can walk on the surface of water, can live underwater, can cure all kinds of diseases, can fearlessly enter a plague-stricken area, by breathing upon water he can reverse its current, with one breath a fire can be extinguished, a puff of breath on to boiling water renders it cool enough to insert the hands, breathing on to knife wounds causes the blood to clot, blowing on to a sword blade renders it too blunt to pierce the skin, blowing at an arrow causes it to boomerang and pierce the sender, breathing on a dog causes it cease barking, wolves and tigers run away, snakes and wasps do not move. In Kiangsu and Chekiang there is a sect who can counteract the effects of incantations, they are not afraid of infectious disease, and are able to deal with all kinds of spiritualistic phenomena. They successfully treat snake bite by simply breathing on the wound. People who are sick over 100 li away are cured by their raising the left hand for men patients and the right for women and then uttering a spell. While their breath is without shape the effect is as great as this, longevity and the relief of hunger are commonplace. Li Shih-Chen says there is a natural building up of the vitality, but these sorcerers have no special power, their breath is ordinary and they cannot effect the things they claim, just fooling people.

431. 人魄. JEN P'O. THE ANIMA. (Ghost).

Kang-Mu: Avicenna, 129:

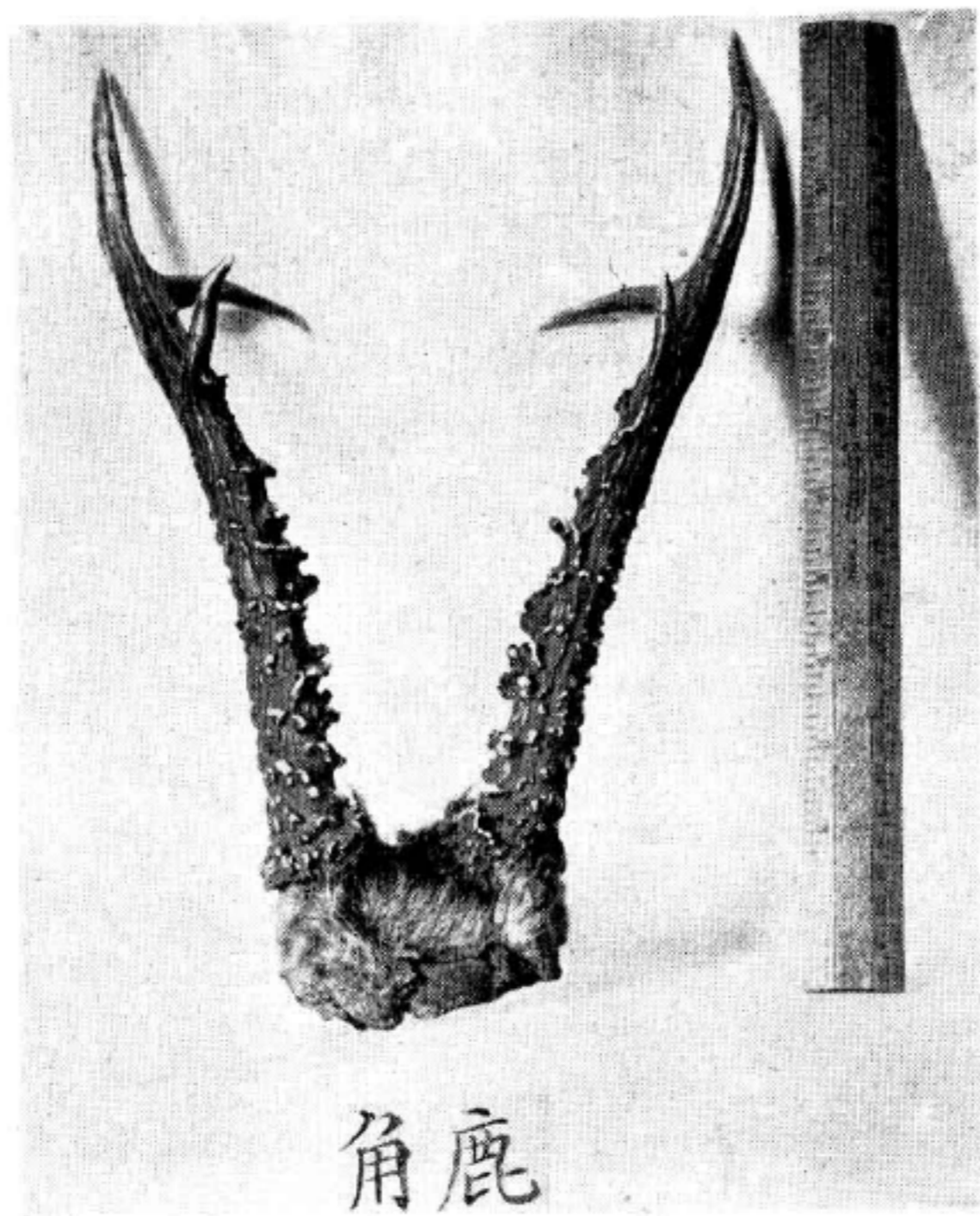
When a man is hung there enters the ground beneath him the anima, which is in form like rotten charcoal which can be dug out of the ground. If not removed it will be the cause of future hangings.

The soul and the anima come together to make man, their intermingling gives life, their separation causes death when the soul goes up to heaven, and the anima enters the ground. The anima is "Yin" in character sinking down and entering the ground it forms this substance, just as a falling comet forms a stone and the light of the eye of a dying tiger falls to the ground to form a white stone, and human blood changes to phosphorus.

It quietens the heart and spirit of a man. It stills ones fears, and cures delirium. Rubbed to a powder and given with water.



Human Cranium.
Ch'i-chow market.



Unusual sample of Deer Horn.
Peking market.

432. 髭鬚. T'ZU HSÜ. WHISKERS AND BEARD.

Cheng-Lei:

The side whiskers are called 髭 Jan.

Ashed and applied to carbuncles.

The T'ang dynasty emperor T'ou Tsung cut off his own whiskers to treat his official Li Hsün.

433. 陰毛. YIN MAO. PUBIC HAIR (M & F).

Shih-Yi:

Pubic hair of the male is used for snake bite. Twelve hairs held in the mouth and sucked will keep the poison from entering the viscera.

For difficult labour, 14 hairs from the husband ashed and taken with lard in the form of a pill.

Pubic hair from the female is used to treat gonorrhoea and sexual diseases. Also for swollen belly in the cow.

434. 人骨. JEN KU. HUMAN BONES.

Shih-Yi:

The growth of the bones depends on the 腎 testes.

The sizes and names of the bones were all described in an old treatise called "Ku Tu P'ien". (The Hsi Yüan Lu also has a good deal of information).

Blood dropped on to whitened bones will soak into the bone if the blood be from the son of the man from whom the bones originally came.

For simple and compound fractures. For diseases of the bones and leg ulcers. Given to develop immunity from the bad effects of a bamboo thrashing.

435. 天靈蓋. T'IEN LING KAI. HUMAN SKULL.

Sung K'ai-Pao: W: CP:

Syn. 腦蓋骨 *Nao Kai Ku*, PT, W: 仙人蓋 *Hsien Jen Kai*, PT:

頭顱蓋 *T'ou Lu Kai*, PT, W:

Cooked in boy's urine and kept in a hole in the ground one foot deep. Men's skulls are used to treat women's diseases, and women's skulls for men. Boiled in sandal wood decoction, and then roasted with cream, women's bones turn red, men's do not.

Saline, bland, nonpoisonous. (Shih-Chen: poisonous).

Given for devil-possession, malaria, feverish colds, weak lungs, tiredness, emaciation, osteomyelitis, nightsweats, flatulence with anorexia, indistinct vision.

For irregular development of smallpox, for suppurating wounds, infantile alopecia.

436. 人胞. JEN PAO. HUMAN PLACENTA.

Shih-Yi:

Syn. 胞衣 *Pao-Yi*, PT: 胎衣 *T'ai Yi*, PT: 紫河車 *Tzu Ho Ch'e*, PT: 混沌衣 *Hun T'un Yi*: 混元母 *Hun Yuan Mu*, PT: 佛袈裟 *Fo Chia Sha*: 仙人衣 *Hsien Jen Yi*, PT.

Formed in 81 days. Material from male children is used to treat men, and that from females for women's diseases. Later prescriptions prefer that of a first born male child, and from a strong mother who is without disease. It is first stood in the wash water from rice, then it is thoroughly washed in running water to remove adherent tissue. Then after washing with olibanum and alcohol it is placed in a bamboo basket and heated over a fire till dry, and powdered, or it is heated on tiles till dry and powdered. It is also sometimes heated in alcohol till it frays and powders. A better method still is to steam it in a double boiler and after breaking it up dry it in the sun. Mr. Tung-Ping says the other methods are wrong and it is a mistake to wash away the adherent tissue.

The mothers of the Lewchew Islands had the custom of always eating the placenta. The Liaos of Kwangsi had a similar custom after male children were born, when all the relatives came and supped from a special dish made from the placenta. These customs are following the habits of the wild beasts that always eat the placenta, but it is not human to do so.

The rules for the ordinary disposal of the placenta are superstitious, apart from simple hygiene the ancients required that it be buried deeply and solidly in a lucky spot. Incineration was forbidden, it was said to cause suppurating boils upon the infants.

Sweet, saline, warming, nonpoisonous.

For anemia and emaciation. For general weakness in women, and black spots on the face.

For all kinds of weakness in both sexes, for delirium and convulsions, and loss of will power. To quieten the heart, benefit the respiration and as a seminal tonic. For conjunctivitis and growth over the eye.

437. 胞衣水. PAO YI SHUI. OLD LIQUIFIED PLACENTA.

Shih-Yi:

Placenta that has been buried seven or eight years liquifies as clear as pure water. Southerners add liquorice and other drugs and bury them with a placenta in a pot for three to five years, before using therapeutically.

Pungent, cold, nonpoisonous.

For head-scabs in children, fevers, ceaseless attack of feverish chills, delirium. Given to quieten a patient whose hair stands up without cause. For constipation. To cure infectious diseases.

For chronic vomiting, one hour after its administration worms should be vomitted out of the stomach.

438. 初生臍帶. CH'U SHENG CH'I TAI. UMBILICAL CORD.

Shih-Yi: First-born.

Syn. 命蒂 *Ming T'i*, PT:

It is cut off with a knife, and later when it has dried out, the part left attached to the child dries up and falls off like a melon stalk.

Burnt to an ash and given for malaria, and to cure toxic suppurations in the child.

For inflamed eyes after smallpox.

439. 人勢. JEN SHIH. THE PENIS.

Kang-Mu:

Syn. 陰莖 *Yin Ching*, PT:

Dried, powdered and taken with alcohol to make open wounds heal up.

440. 人膽. JEN TAN. HUMAN GALL.

Shih-Yi:

In Li's time the northern soldiers used human bile to dress sword wounds on the battlefield, but it must not have other drugs added else the wounds suppurate. Soldiers too drink the bile with wine to give them courage. This is not a gentlemanly thing to do.

For chronic malaria of many years standing. For inability to swallow food. For intermittent fever.

441. 人肉. JEN JOU. HUMAN FLESH.

Shih-Yi:

Syn. 瘵疾 *Chi Chi*, PT.

Recommended by Ch'en Ts'ang-Ch'i in the Ming dynasty for tuberculosis. There was a popular idea before Ch'en's time that cutting off ones flesh or cutting out the liver was good for making certain prescriptions. Such practices should not have been encouraged by Ch'en. Li Shih-Chen acknowledges these practices among the ignorant masses but he did not consider that any parent, however ill, should expect such sacrifices from their children. In the Ming dynasty a man named Chiang Po-Erh, had his mother ill, so he first, without any benefit resulting, administered his own flesh to her. Then he made an oath which he subsequently fulfilled, that if his mother recovered he would sacrifice to the gods his three year old son. The Emperor was very angry and severely punished him for this unreasonable behaviour. The Emperor passed this matter to the Board of Rites, and they strongly opposed the practice saying that if there be sickness in the family the relatives should

invite a good doctor and they might pray to the gods but bad practices like this should be put down by proclamation. Soldiers with inhuman feeling used to eat human flesh, such cannibalistic practices Li Shih-Chen strongly denounces.

442. 木乃伊. *MU NAI YI*. **HUMAN MUMMY CONFECTION.**

Li Shih-Chen:

According to 陶九成 T'ao Chiu-Ch'eng in the 輟耕錄 Ch'o Keng Lu, it says in Arabia there are men 70 to 80 years old who are willing to give their bodies to save others. The subject does not eat food, he only bathes and partakes of honey. After a month he only excretes honey (the urine and feces are entirely honey) and death follows. His fellow men place him in a stone coffin full of honey in which he macerates. The date is put upon the coffin giving the year and month. After a hundred years the seals are removed. A confection is formed which is used for the treatment of broken and wounded limbs. A small amount taken internally will immediately cure the complaint. It is scarce in Arabia where it is called mellified man.

Mr. T'ao has recorded it in this way but Li Shih-Chen the author of this Pen Ts'ao does not know whether it is true so he is recording it for others to verify.

(The Burmese priests have the custom of preserving their chief abbots in coffins full of honey.)

443. 方民. *FANG MIN*. **CLIMATOLOGY.**

Li Shih-Chen:

Although all mankind has horizontal eyes and two legs, their customs and behaviour differ a great deal. A man's temperament and style depend on his environmental influences, astrological, geographical and climatic. Just as insects show environmental changes (a white louse becomes black when it lives in the hair), so do animals. The pig in Liaotung has turned white. Animals which are aquatic have a rank odor, a vegetarian diet produces a goatly smell. Hence it is easily seen how great an influence diet may have on the character of people, also living conditions show great variation. The local character of the various groups in China are described by Li Shih-Chen.

People of the *Eastern* provinces on the seacoast, have a fish diet and like salty foods. They have a dark complexion and rough skin. They suffer chiefly from boils and skin eruptions, for the cure of which the best method is acupuncture with stone needles.

Those of the *Western* lands are in a mountainous environment with wind storms, the local water and earth are hard and strong, they do not wear clothes, but have girdles, their diet is rich and fatty. They have internal diseases for the cure of which one uses toxic drugs.

People in the *North* live in the mountains, with cold winds and much ice. They live in the wilds and live on milk foods. They suffer from indigestion and cold sicknesses of the viscera, treated by the moxa method.

Southerners are on low lying ground, the water and earth is soft and weak, the climate is misty. They like acid foods, and eat the visceral meats (pig's liver etc.). Their complexion is fine. They suffer from rheumatism and paralysis, treated by light acupuncture.

Central China is flat and damp, they have a good mixed diet and are not weak. They suffer from lameless and constipation (static diseases), for which corrective medicines are given with massage, etc.

In Chingchow there are 2 women to every man. Yangchow has a proportion of 2 men to 5 women, Ch'ingchow has an equal distribution of the sexes, Yenchow has 2 men to 3 women, Yuchow has 1 man to 3 women, Pingchow 2 men to 3 women, Yüchow 2 men to 3 women, Yungchow 3 men to 2 women, Chichow (Chihli) 5 men to 3 women (From the Chou Li, B. C. 122-249).

The place of birth has a specific influence on people. In hilly country there are more boy babies born. In damp climates there are more girls. People born near water are more often dumb, in windy districts people are deaf, in forest areas there is constipation, in woodlands the people are weak in the back, in rocky places people are strong, lowlanders have swellings, people who live in the mountains have goitre, in the valleys there is paralytic disease, in hill places there is more insanity. People on the great plains are benevolent, those on the highlands are jealous folk. In hot climates people are short lived, cold climates tend to longevity. Where the earth is light in weight the people are quick witted, but heavy earth districts have dull people. Where the water is clear the voice is quiet, muddy water areas have loud voiced people.

444. 人傀. *JEN K'UEI*. **HUMAN MONSTROSITIES.**

Li Shih-Chen: C. J. S. Thompson, *The Mystery and Lore of Monsters*, London, 1930.

It is natural that there should be both male and female principles in the world. The intermarriage of men and women is according to the same principle as the birth of all living things. The *Ch'ien* or heavenly forces form the male and the earthly or *K'un Tao* form the female. If the blood of the female envelope the male sperm a son is born, if the semen envelope the female blood it forms a female child. When they intermingle together hermaphrodites are born. Subdivision of the gametes produces twins and triplets.

Pregnancy which commences on the first, third and fifth days after menstruation produces a male child, the second, fourth and sixth days produce females. Another authority said that the males came from the first and second days, and the females from the third, fourth and fifth days. The Sheng Chi Ching says it is a local matter. Impregnation to the left side produces males, and the right produces females. Seeing that twins and triplets are

often mixed Li Shih-Chen does not see how the time factor can apply, in fact there are numerous cases of 4 or even 5 children being born at the same time, which makes it appear as though the position in the uterus was the chief factor. Wang Shu-Ho in the Treatise on the Pulse, says it depends on the circulation, and its intensity on the right and left side of the body (as observed at the wrist). Kao Yang-Shen said he could tell by the pulse whether there were twins or triplets, but Li Shih-Chen says he drew on his imagination.

Natural causes of sterility in the male is of five types. 1. Impotency, when the sexual act is impossible due to lack of strength in the penis, which the ancients called a "natural eunuch". 2. Eunuchs. 3. When the semen is cold and there is a constant watery flow. 4. Psychic inhibition. Failure to carry it through due to fear and emotional reactions. 5. Hermaphrodites 人疴 *Jen K'o*.

Natural causes of sterility in the female is of five types. 1. Spiral growths in the vagina. 2. Excessive smallness of the vagina. 3. Imperforate hymen. 4. Tumor of the uterus. 5. Women who have never menstruated, and those who have contracted sexual disease, &c.

Pregnancy. A normal pregnancy is ten months. Some births take place after seven or eight months, others after twelve or thirteen months, and some after fourteen or fifteen months, because the constitution is weak. Yü-Po in the Yi-Hsüeh-Cheng-Chuan says that some pregnancies last 17 or 18 months to 24 or 25 months. At T'ai Yuan Fu the mother of Wen P'an-Shih was pregnant three years. Children born at seven months are said to survive better than those at eight months. There are statements concerning various famous men who were said to be born after abnormally long pregnancies. Huang Ti was said to have been born after 25 months.

It is natural that a child be born from the womb, but there are those who are born from the ribs, from the forehead, the back, and the buttocks. There are also unusual growths of the foetus, the records of the Sung dynasty tell of the genitalia of a boy growing from the back, and that of a girl occurring on the head. A number of abnormal deliveries are cited. Some are explained as being the result of the necrosis of tissue of deep seated boils, through which the foetus in some remarkable way is expelled, q.v.

Normal pregnancy is dependant upon the combined forces of Yang and Yin. However there are bachelors without wives who have sexual experiences, and there are single women who as a result of their desire become pregnant. There are women who grow whiskers, and men who secrete milk and men who give birth to children. These are due to changes in the secretions (氣, see article on this subject, No. 430), as seen in the 女國 (a Kingdom in old history said to consist only of women) where the women had spontaneous pregnancy, and one finds in the animal kingdom cocks which lay eggs.

Male children are born facing downwards, and females facing upward. The same posture is adopted by the corpses of the two sexes when drowned. This naturally follows the correct principles of the *Yin* and the *Yang*.

Hermaphrodites. There are males which turn into females and vice versa. It is the irregular secretions which cause these changes and confused reactions. In olden times certain crimes were punished by castration. Men falsely charged and convicted, subsequently change into women. The development of male characteristics in the female is due to the government of the country being under women. (There are other explanations with the underlying idea that when the influence of the *Yang* principle is weak, the women develop male bodies, and the converse was applied to the influence of the *Yin*.) Li Shih-Chen says that, however, this may be explained by external influences, the internal changes in the individual are beyond the powers of man to comprehend. Various records are given of the reversal of sex characters in people. One girl at 17 became a male, and a man of 28 was said suddenly to develop abdominal pain, and the whole genitalia underwent anatomical change.

Metamorphosis. Li Shih-Chen believed in the metamorphosis of men into animals and inanimate objects; and the converse was considered quite possible, as established by various citations of incidents recorded in old literature. There was also the idea that women could be influenced in their thinking to produce unnatural offspring, giving birth to horses, insects, beasts, devils or monsters.

Monsters. Normal parturition produces a child with four limbs and seven body orifices (2 ears, 2 eyes, 2 nostrils, 1 mouth), but in deserts and wild places there are people born with three heads, Siamese twins, movable (flying) heads and people with tails; this is due to the influence of the wilds. These are not to be considered human, they are to be classed as strange animals. In the Yung Ch'ang-Chih records we read that in the southwestern borderlands the natives have tails like turtles, three to four inches long; if they want to sit down they have first to make a hole in the ground to put their tails, for if they are not careful the tail snaps off and the person dies.

The creative powers of the universe are unlimited, the transmutation of animate and inanimate things is unlimited. Heaven and earth are like a furnace, the work of which is to create. The *Yin* and the *Yang* are like energy (the fuel) and the universe is material which can be dissipated or brought together, dissolved or built up in an infinite number of permutations and combinations. When man suddenly appears it is the result of natural forces, the creation of monsters also follows natural laws, they are all a part of nature. Only men of limited learning are dogmatic and regard the infinite transmutation of things as strange or impossible.

CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

- ADS. = Arthur de C. Sowerby. *The Naturalist in Manchuria*, 1922, Vol. I—V, and other publications.
- BCP. = Bryan, C. P., *the Papyrus Ebers*, (B.C. 1500, Thebes, Egypt), London, 1930.
- BE. = Brass, Emil. *Tiere Ostasiens*, Neudamm, 1904.
- BFE. = Beddard, F. E., *Cambridge Natural History, Mammals*, Vol. X, London, 1909.
- CMC. = *Chinese Maritime Customs, List of Chinese Medicines*, Shanghai, 1889.
- CP. = *English Chinese Dictionary*, W. W. Yen, Commercial Press, Shanghai, 1908.
- DH. = David Hooper, *Chinese drugs in Malaya*, *The Gardener's Bulletin, Strait Settlements*, 1929, VI, pp. 1-163.
- FH. = Franz Hübotter, *Beitrage zur Kenntniss der chinesischen sowie der tibetisch-mongolischen Pharmacologie*, Berlin, 1914.
- G. = Herbert A. Giles, *A Chinese English Dictionary*, Kelly & Walsh, 1912.
- JPK. = J. P. Kleiweg de Zwaan, *Heilkunde der Chinesen und Haarlem*, 1917, Chapter IX, pp. 163-193.
- JR. = Jules Regnault, *Médecine et Pharmacie chez les chinois chez les Annamites*, Paris, 1899, *Index Pharmaceutique*, pp. 139-204.
- KMN. = K. M. Nardkarni, *Indian Materia Medica*, Bombay, 1927, pp. 1417.
- ME. = A. Milne Edwards, *Etudes pour servir à l'histoire de la Faune Mammalogique de la Chine*, Paris, 1870, fol. plates.
- PH. = Perrot, E. and Hurrier, P., *Materia Medica et Pharmacopée Sino-Annamites*, Paris, 1907.
- PS. = F. Porter Smith, *Chinese Materia Medica*, Shanghai, 1871.
- PT. = Pen Ts'ao Kang Mu 本草綱目, Li Shih Chen. A. D. 1597.
- RB. = R. Braun, *List of Medicines, Yangtze Ports, Chin. Mar. Customs*, Shanghai, 1909.
- RL. = R. Lydekker, *Catalogue of Ungulate Mammals*, British Museum, 1913. Vols. 1-5.
- RNH. = R. Lydekker, *Royal Natural History*, Vols. 1-6, London, 1896.
- SC. = Severance Collection, Unpublished notes.
- SK. = S. Kubota and T. Okanishi, *Folia Pharmacorum Sinicorum*, *Chinese Materia Medica*, Mukden, 1931.
- SW. = Swinhoe, *Catalogue of Mammals of China*, *Proc. Zoological Society*, London, 1870, p. 631.
- UMST. = U. M. S. Torresani, *Furs and Skins*, Ch. Mar. Customs, Shanghai, 1928.
- VM. = O. F. von Mollendorff, *N. C. Roy. As. Soc.*, 1877, XI, 31-112.
- W. = S. Wells Williams, *A Syllabic Dictionary of the Chinese Language*, N. C. Union College, 1909.
- Wa. = E. Watson, *Articles of Chinese Commerce*, Shanghai, 1923.
- WAC. = A. C. Wootton, *Chronicles of Pharmacy*, London, 1910, Vol. II.
- ZN. = *Zoological Nomenclature*, Shanghai, 1924, 動物學大辭典, Commercial Press, in Chinese.

INDEX TO CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA

	Serial No.		Serial No.
<i>Alces machlis</i>	365	Camel hair and hoof	346
<i>Allactaga mongolica</i>	388	<i>Camelus bactrianus</i>	330
Anima, human	43I	<i>Canis alpinus</i>	379
Antelope	362	<i>Canis familiaris</i>	323
<i>Antilope caudata</i>	362	<i>Canis familiaris chinensis</i>	379
<i>Antilope crispa</i>	362	<i>Canis hodophilax</i>	379
<i>Antilope gutturosa</i>	325	<i>Canis houly</i>	374
<i>Antilope mongolica</i>	388	<i>Canis lupus</i>	380
<i>Apodemus speciosus</i>	397	<i>Canis lupus tschiliensis</i>	379
<i>Arctomys bobac</i>	393	<i>Canis procyonoides</i>	372, 375
<i>Arctomys marmotta</i>	393	<i>Canis vulgaris</i>	374
<i>Arctomys sibericus</i>	393	<i>Capra ammon</i>	363
Argali sheep	363	<i>Capra hirsus</i>	324
Ass	328	<i>Capricornis crispus</i>	362
		<i>Castor fiber</i>	386
Baboon	404	Cat, civet	370
Badger	377	Cat, domestic	37I
Badger, Chinese	376	Cat, wild	372
Bear, black	36I	Cattle	326
Bear, brown	36I A	<i>Cercopithecus sp.</i>	404
Bear, Japanese brown	36I B	Cerumen	4II
Beaver	386	<i>Cervus alces</i>	365
Bezoar, camel	330	<i>Cervus sika</i>	364
Bezoar, cow	337	<i>Cervus swinhoii</i>	366
Bezoar, dog	339	<i>Cervus unicolor</i>	367
Bezoar, human	42I	Chai dog	379
Bile, Human	440	Cheese	334
Bile, Turfan pig	340	Chicken	268
Blood, animal	34I	Chicken blood	34I
Blood, human	424	Chicken bones	342
Blood, menstrual	423	Chicken feathers and claws	346
Boar, wild	359	Chicken heart	347
Bones, animal	342	Civet cat	370
Bones, human	434	Climatology	443
<i>Bos grunniens</i>	356	Colla	335
<i>Bos grunniens domest.</i>	357	Cow	326
<i>Bos taurus</i>	326	Cow bezoar	337
Breath, human	434	Cow blood	34I
Butter, Mongol	332	Cow bones	342
		Cow flesh	343
<i>Calculi animalis</i>	338	Cow hair and hoof	346
<i>Calculi bovis</i>	337	Cow heart	347
<i>Calculi canis</i>	339	Cow, sea	356
<i>Callorhinus curilensis</i>	386 A	Cranium, human	435
<i>Callorhinus ursinus</i>	386 A		
Camel	330		

	Serial No.		Serial No.
Cream	33I	<i>Felis fontanieri</i>	352
<i>Cynocephalus hamadryas</i>	404	<i>Felis leo</i>	350
<i>Cynocephalus mormor</i>	404	<i>Felis leopardus</i>	352
<i>Cynocephalus porcarius</i>	404 A	<i>Felis manul</i>	372
		<i>Felis microtis</i>	352, 372
Dandruff, human	410	<i>Felis tigris</i>	35I
Deer, Chinese	367	<i>Felis uncia</i>	352
Deer, musk	369	<i>Felis villosa</i>	352
Deer, river	368	Felt	345
Deer, sika	364	Finger nails, human	413
Deer, two headed	366	Flesh, chicken	343
<i>Dipus annulatus</i>	388	Flesh, cow	343
Dog	323	Flesh, dog	343
Dog bezoar	339	Flesh, horse	343
Dog blood	34I	Flesh, human	44I
Dog bones	342	Flesh, pig	343
Dog, chai	379	Flesh, sheep	343
Dog flesh	343	Fox	374
Dog heart	347	Fox, silver	378
Dog, racoon	375	Fur seal	386
Donkey	328		
Dryad	406	Gallstone, human	42I
Dryad, four-eyed	405	Gallstone, various	337 to 340
		Gerbil	395
Earwax, human	411	Ghee	333
Elephant	354	Ghosts	43I
<i>Elephas indicus</i>	354	Gibbon	40I, 40I A
Elf	405	Glue	335
Elk	365	Glue, clarified	336
<i>Enhydris marina</i>	385	Goat	324
<i>Epimys confucianus</i>	388		
<i>Epimys norvegicus caraco</i>	388	Hair, animal	346
<i>Equus asinus chinensis</i>	328	Hair, boys	408
<i>Equus asinus mulus</i>	329	Hair, human	409
<i>Equus caballus</i>	327	Hair, pubic	433
<i>Equus przewalski</i>	358	<i>Hapale jacchus</i>	40I
<i>Erinaceus dealbatus</i>	399	Hare	38I
<i>Erinaceus hanensis</i>	399	Hedgehog	399
Ermine	395 A	Hermaphrodites	444
		Herpestes sp.	398, 402 A
Feces, human	415	Hog	322
<i>Felis catus</i>	372	Horse	327
<i>Felis domestica</i>	37I	Horse blood	34I
<i>Felis euptilura</i>	372	Horse bones	342

	Serial No.		Serial No.
Horse flesh	343	Man	408 to 444
Horse hair	344	Man and climate	443
Horse heart	345	Marmoset	401
Horse hoof	344	Marmot	393, 395
Horse, wild	358	<i>Marmota bobac</i>	393
Human body parts	408 to 444	Marten	394
<i>Hydropotes inermis</i>	368	<i>Martes martes</i>	394
<i>Hylobates agilis</i>	401 A	<i>Martes melampus</i>	394
<i>Hylobates entelloides</i>	401	<i>Martes zibellina</i>	394
<i>Hylobates hainanus</i>	401 A	Meconium, human	416
<i>Hylobates henrici</i>	401 A	<i>Meles amurensis</i>	377
<i>Hystrix cristata</i>	360	<i>Meles anakuma</i>	377
		<i>Meles chinensis</i>	376
<i>Inuus silenus</i>	400 B	<i>Meles leptorhynchus</i>	376
		<i>Meles leucolaemus</i>	377
Jackal	379	Menstrual blood	423
Jerboa	388	Menstrual cloth	423 A
Kastura	369	<i>Meriones anceps</i>	395
Knee dirt, human	412	<i>Meriones psammophilus</i>	395
		<i>Meriones unguiculatus</i>	395
Langur	404	<i>Microtes sp.</i>	388
<i>Latax lutris</i>	385	Milk, human	422
Leopard	352	Mink	396
<i>Leopardus brachyurus</i>	352	Mole	389
<i>Leopardus japonicus</i>	352	Mole, tapir	390
<i>Lepus brachyurus</i>	381	Mongoose	398, 402 A
<i>Lepus timidus</i>	381	Monkeys	400
<i>Lepus tolai</i>	381	Monkeys, long armed	401
Lion	350	Monkeys, proboscis	402
Liquid feces	415 A	Monkeys, sloth	372
<i>Loris sp.</i>	372	Monstrosities, human	444
<i>Lutra chinensis</i>	383	Moose	365
<i>Lutra cinerea</i>	384	Moustache, human	432
<i>Lutra lutra</i>	384	<i>Moschus chinensis</i>	367
<i>Lutra vulgaris</i>	384	<i>Moschus chinloo</i>	368
		<i>Moschus moschiferus</i>	369
<i>Macacus chinensis</i>	400	<i>Moschus sibericus</i>	369
<i>Macacus fuscatus</i>	400	Mouse	397
<i>Macacus lasiotus</i>	400	Mule	329
<i>Macacus sancti Johannis</i>	402 B	Mummy	442
<i>Macacus tschiliensis</i>	400	<i>Mus decumans</i>	388
<i>Macacus tibetanus</i>	400	<i>Mus humiliatus</i>	388
Macaque	400	<i>Mus speciosus</i>	397
Mammoth	390	Musk	369

	Serial No.		Serial No.
Musk deer	369	Rabbit fur	382
<i>Mustela davidiana</i>	396	Raccoon dog	375
<i>Mustela erminea</i>	395	Rat, bamboo	392
<i>Mustela itatis</i>	396	Rat, brown	388
<i>Mustela melampus</i>	394	Rat, Norwegian	388
<i>Mustela nivalis pygmaeus</i>	395	Rhinoceros	355
<i>Mustela putorius</i>	396	<i>Rhinoceros indicus</i>	355
<i>Mustela siberica</i>	396	<i>Rhinoceros sumatrensis</i>	355
		<i>Rhinoceros unicornis</i>	355
Naiads	407	<i>Rhinopithecus roxellanae</i>	404
Nails, human	413	<i>Rhizomys sinensis</i>	392
<i>Nemorrhaedus crispus</i>	362	<i>Rhytina gigas</i>	356
<i>Nycticebus tardigradus</i>	373		
Orangoutang	403	Sable	394
<i>Otaria ursina</i>	486 A	Saliva, human	425
Otter, Chinese	383	Sand rat	395
Otter, fresh-water	384	Sea otter	385
Otter, sea	385	Seal, fur	386
<i>Ovis ammon</i>	363	<i>Scaptochinus moschatus</i>	390
<i>Ovis argali</i>	363	<i>Sciurus caniceps</i>	391
<i>Ovis aries</i>	324	<i>Sciurus davidianus</i>	391
Ox	326	<i>Sciurus vulgaris</i>	391
Ox, grunting	356	<i>Selenarctos ussuricus</i>	361
		Semen, human	426
Penis, human	439	<i>Semnopithecus francoisi</i>	402
Perspiration	428	<i>Semnopithecus larvatus</i>	402
Pig	322	<i>Semnopithecus roxellanae</i>	404
Pig blood	341	Serow, Japanese	362
Pig bones	342	Sheep	324
Pig flesh	343	Sheep, argali	364
Pig hair	346	Sheep blood	341
Pig heart	347	Sheep bones	342
Pig hoof	346	Sheep flesh	343
Pine marten	394	Sheep hair	346
<i>Pithecus satyrus</i>	403	Sheep heart	347
Placenta, human	437	Sheep hoof	346
Placenta, old	438	Sika deer	364
<i>Poephagus grunniens</i>	356	Silver fox	378
Pony	358	<i>Simia satyrus</i>	403
Porcupine	360	Skins, old drum	344
Pork	343	Skull, human	435
<i>Putorius sibiricus</i>	396	Sloth monkey	372
		Sprite	405
Rabbit	381	Squirrel	391

	Serial No.		Serial No.
Stoat	395 A	Urinary sediments	418
Stone, Mongol rain	338	<i>Ursus arctos</i>	361 A
<i>Sus gigas</i>	359	<i>Ursus arctos collaris</i>	361 B
<i>Sus leucomystax</i>	359	<i>Ursus torquatus japonicus</i>	361
<i>Sus meles</i>	359		
<i>Sus palludosus</i>	359	<i>Viverra ashtoni</i>	370
<i>Sus scrofa</i>	322	<i>Viverra civetta</i>	370
		<i>Viverra filchneri</i>	370
<i>Talpa longirostris</i>	389	<i>Viverra Zibetha</i>	370
<i>Talpa mogura</i>	389	<i>Vulpes tschiliensis</i>	373
Tapir, Malayan	353	<i>Vulpes vulpes</i>	374
Tapir mole	390		
<i>Tapirus indicus</i>	353	Weasel	391
Tartar, human	427	Weasel, Manchurian	395
Tears, human	429	Weasel, Siberian	396
Teeth, human	414	Wolf	380
Tiger	351	Wolf, chai	379
Umbilical cord, human	438		
Urea	419	Yak, domestic	357
Urine, human	417	Yak, Tibetan	356

CHINESE INDEX.

A:			CH:		
Ah Chiao*	阿膠	335	Chia Li	家狸	371
Ah Shih P'ò	阿濕婆	327	Chia Lu	家鹿	388
Ah T'zu Po T'a Ni	阿慈勃他你	386	Chiao T'u	狡兔	353
Ai Yeh Pao	艾葉豹	352	Chieh	羯	324
An Chi	按季	423	Chieh Chieh	竭伽	355
An Ching	暗經	423	Chieh Chu Jou Tu	解諸肉毒	349
Ao	葵	323	Chieh Yeh	伽耶	354
CH:			Chien	獫	323
Cha Ta	鮮苔	338	Chien	麋	364
Chan	氈	345	Chien Erh Yang	繭耳羊	325
Chan Hu	斬獮	402	Chien Mao	號貓	351
Chang	麋	368	Chih	彘	322
Chang Pao	麋麋	369	Chih	隲	327
Chang Tzu	麋子	368	Chih	麇	367
Chao Chia	爪甲	413	Chih Chia	指甲	413
Che	麴	323	Chin Chiang	金漿	426
Che Shou	蟄獸	361	Chin Chih	金汁	415
Chen Jou	震肉	343	Chin Ch'ien Pao	金錢豹	352
Chi	獾	322	Chin Hsien Jung	金線狨	401
Chi	獾	345	Chin T'ui	筋退	413
Chi	麋	367	Ching	麋	367
Chi Chi	療疾	441	Chiu	麋	365
Chi Chü	暨居	399	Chiu Chieh Li	九節狸	372
Chi Ch'ü	狝狝	373	Chiu Wei Yang	九尾羊	362
Chi Niu	稷牛	326	Cho	麋	381
Chia	羆	322	Cho Shu	鼯鼠	391
Chia	麋	364	Chou	獬	375
Chia Hsiung	羆熊	361	Chou Liu Niu	州留牛	326

*Heavy type names are main headings.

CH:			CH:		
Chu	猪	322	Chün	驢	358
Chu	鼻	327	Chün	麝	368
Chu Ch'i Tzu	猪氣子	322	Chün Shu	鼯鼠	391
Chu Hsiu Ku	諸朽骨	342	CH':		
Chu Hsiung	猪熊	361	Ch'a Chiao	插翅	383
Chu Hsüeh	諸血	341	Ch'ai	豺	379
Chu Huan	猪獾	376,377	Ch'ai Kou	豺狗	379
Chu Jou Yu Tu	諸肉有毒	348	Ch'ang Pei Hou	長臂猴	401
Chu Ling	猪零	322	Ch'en	麋	365
Chu Liu	竹髓	392	Ch'eng	程	352
Chu Liu	竹髓	392	Ch'i	騏	358
Chu Niu	竹牛	356	Ch'i	魁	405
Chu Shih Tzu	猪石子	322	Ch'i Hsiang	臍香	369
Chu Tzu	猪子	322	Ch'i Kao	鬻膏	327
Chu T'ui	猪退	322	Ch'ieh	鼯	388
Chu T'un	竹狍	392	Ch'ih Hsi	齒塗	427
Chui Lo Hsi	墮羅犀	355	Ch'ih Hsiung	赤熊	361
Chui Shu	鼯鼠	388	Ch'ih Kou	齒垢	427
Chung Shu	鼯鼠	388	Ch'ih Ts'ao	齒草	326
Chū	獐	322	Ch'in Niu	擦牛	326
Chū	駒	327	Ch'ing Ju Yu	清乳油	333
Chū	狙	400	Ch'ing Yang	青羊	324,362
Chū	麋	400	Ch'iu Erh	酋耳	351
Chū Ching	居經	423	Ch'iu Ping	秋冰	419
Chū Fu	舉父	400	Ch'iu Shih	秋石	419
Chū Hsü	距驢	329	Ch'ou Niu	犛牛	356
Chüeh Shu	蹙鼠	388	Ch'ou Pao	丑寶	337
Chüeh T'ai	角胎	326	Ch'u Sheng Ch'i Tai	初生臍帶	438
Chüeh T'i	馱驢	329	Ch'ü Ch'ing	飽髓	388

CH:			F:		
Ch'u Lu Che No	嬰盧折娜	337	Feng Niu	封牛	330
Ch'ü Shu	饅餛	345	Feng Sheng Shou	虱生獸	373
Ch'ü Sou	渠搜	35I	Feng Tzu Yu	峰子油	330
Ch'üan	犬	323	Feng Yang	封羊	324
Ch'üan T'ou Yuan	犬頭猿	404	Fo Chia Sha	佛袈裟	436
Ch'üeh	攫	400	Fu Chih Chiao	傅致膠	335
Ch'üeh Shu	雀鼠	39I	Fu Jen Yüeh Shui	婦人月水	423
E:			Fu P'en Chiao	覆盆膠	335
Erh	兒	327	H:		
Erh Kou	耳垢	4II	Hai	孩	322
Erh Sai	耳塞	4II	Hai Chi Hsi	海鷄犀	355
F:			Hai Hsi Chiao	海犀膠	336
Fa Pei	髮髮	408	Hai Huan	海獾	377
Fan Yang	蕃羊	325	Hai Kou	海狗	386
Fang Min	方民	443	Hai Lü	海驢	328
Fei	駢	327	Hai Niu	海牛	356
Fei	魀	388	Hai T'a	海獺	385
Fei Fei	狒狒	404	Han	魃	35I
Fei Fei	鬪鬪	404	Han	豸	353
Fen	攢	322	Han Shu	鼯鼠	388
Fen Chiao	全膠	335	Hao Chih	豪彘	360
Fen Ch'ing	糞清	4I5	Hao Chu	豪豬	360
Fen Shih	糞石	338	Hao Chu	蒿豬	360
Fen Shu	鼯鼠	389	Hao Tzu	耗子	397
Fen Yang	羴羊	324	He	褐	345
Feng	封	407	He	貉	375
Feng Chiao T'o	風脚駝	330	Hei Tiao	黑貂	394
Feng Li	風狸	373	Ho	鼯	388
Feng Mu	風母	373	Hou	猴	400

H:			H:		
Hou Ching	猴經	400	Hsuan Pao	玄豹	378
Hsi	豨	322	Hsüeh Yü	血餘	409
Hsi	犀	355	Hu	穀	322
Hsi Kou	膝垢	412	Hu	虎	351
Hsi Shu	鼯鼠	395	Hu	狐	374
Hsi Shu	鼯鼠	397	Hu Ch'üan	胡犬	351
Hsi Yüeh Sha	翫月砂	381	Hu Li	虎狸	372
Hsia Yang	夏羊	324	Hu Mao Hsi	胡帽犀	355
Hsiang	象	354	Hu Pai	狐白	374
Hsiang Chang	香麝	369	Hu Po	琥珀	351
Hsiang Li	香狸	370	Hu Sun	胡孫	400
Hsiao	麴	350	Hu Yang	胡羊	324
Hsiao Erh T'ai Shih	小兒胎屎	416	Hua	猾	387
Hsiao Pien	小便	417	Huan	獾	377,380
Hsiao Yang	梟羊	404	Huan T'un	獾狨	376
Hsieh	猓	323	Huan Yuan Shui	還元水	415
Hsien Hou	仙猴	402	Huan Yuan T'ang	還元湯	417
Hsien Jen Chiu	仙人酒	422	Huang Hsiung	黃熊	361
Hsien Jen Kai	仙人蓋	435	Huang Lung T'ang	黃龍湯	415
Hsien Jen Yi	仙人衣	436	Huang Ming Chiao	黃明膠	336,364
Hsien Yang	麋羊	362	Huang Niu	黃牛	326
Hsien Yang	羴羊	363	Huang Shu	黃鼠	395
Hsin Chieh Hsiang	心結香	369	Huang Shu Lang	黃鼠狼	396
Hsin Huang	心黃	337	Huang Tiao	黃貂	394
Hsing Hsing	猩猩	403	Huang Yang	黃羊	325
Hsing Ku	筋骨	324	Huang Yao	黃腰	351,401
Hsiung	熊	361	Huang Yu	黃油	332
Hsiung Pai	熊白	361	Hui	蜃	399
Hsü	鬚	409	Hui Chüeh	回礁	326

H:			J:		
Hui Shu	灰鼠	391	Jou	獠	401
Hun Shu	鼯鼠	395	Ju Chih	乳汁	422
Hun T'un Yi	混沌衣	436	Ju Fu	乳腐	334
Hun Yuan Mu	混元母	436	Ju Ping	乳餅	334
Hung Chi	紅麕	367	Ju P'i	乳皮	331
Hung Ch'ien	紅鉛	423	Ju Yang	乳羊	324
Huo Shu	火鼠	388	Ju Yu	乳油	332
Huo Wan Pu	火浣布	388	Jung	狻	401
J:			K:		
Jan	然	402	Kan K'ou Shu	甘口鼠	397
Jan	髻	409	Kan Lo	乾酪	331
Jen Ching	人精	425	Kang Lieh	剛鬣	322
Jen Chung Huang	人中黃	415	Kou	狗	323
Jen Chung Pai	人中白	418	Kou Huan	狗獾	377
Jen Ch'i	人氣	430	Kou Pao	狗寶	339
Jen Fen	人糞	415	Kou Pien	狗鞭	323
Jen Han	人汗	428	Kou T'ai	垢胎	423
Jen Hsiung	人熊	361,404	Ku	殺	324
Jen Hsüeh	人血	424	Ku Na	骨納	386
Jen Jou	人肉	441	Ku Shu	鼯鼠	396
Jen Ku	人骨	434	Kung Shu	拱鼠	395
Jen Kuei	人傀	444	Kuo Hsia Niu	果下牛	326
Jen Pao	人胞	436	Kuo Jan	獠獠	402
Jen P'o	人魄	431	Kuo Jan	果然	402
Jen Shih	人屎	415	K':		
Jen Shih	人勢	439	K'o	課	327
Jen Sui	人尿	417	K'ou Chin T'u	口津唾	426
Jen Tan	人膽	440	K'uei Niu	夔牛	356
Jen T'ui	人退	409	K'un	髡	408

L:			L:		
Lan Hou	懶猴	373	Lo	騾	329
Lang	狼	380	Lo	羸	329
Lao (Lo)	酪	331	Lo T'o	駱駝	330
Lao Shu	老鼠	388	Lou	穉	322
Lei	雌	402	Lou T'ai	漏胎	423
Li	狸	372	Lu	鹿	364
Li Ai	鼯鼠	388	Lu	獲	376
Li Ch'üan	醴泉	426	Lu Chiao Shuang	鹿角霜	364
Li Erh	狸兒	351	Lu Ch'üan	露犬	351
Li Erh	李耳	351	Lu Ch'üeh Chiao	鹿角膠	364
Li Fu	李父	351	Luan Chu	鸞豬	360
Li Shu	犁鼠	389	Luan Fa	亂髮	409
Li Shu	栗鼠	394	Lun Hui Chiu	輪迴酒	417
Li Shu	禮鼠	395	Lü	驢	328
Liang Chiao T'o	兩脚駝	330	Lü Pien	驢鞭	28
Lieh	獫狁	327	Lü Yang	驢羊	324
Lieh Niu	撥牛	357	M:		
Lien T'ieh	聯貼	322	Ma	馬	327
Lin Shih	淋石	420	Ma Hsiung	馬熊	361
Ling	零	327	Ma Ju Chiu	馬乳酒	327
Ling Li	靈狸	370	Ma Liu	馬留	400
Ling Mao	靈貓	370	Ma Mo	馬墨	327,337
Ling Shu Kao	靈鼠膏	395	Ma Niu	摩牛	356
Ling Yang	靈羊	324	Ma Szu Ko Yu	馬思哥油	332
Ling Yang	麕羊	362	Man Huang	漫黃	337
Ling Yang	羚羊	362	Mao	貓	371
Ling Yeh	靈液	426	Mao Hsi	毛犀	355,356
Liu Ch'u Hsin	六畜心	347	Mao Kou	毛狗	380
Liu Ch'u Mao T'i Chia	六畜毛蹄甲	346	Mao Li	貓狸	372

M:			N:		
Mao Niu (Li Niu)	犖牛	356	Nai Chih	爛汁	422
Mao Niu	貓牛	356	Nai Tou Fu	奶豆腐	334
Mao Niu	犏牛	357	Nao Kai Ku	腦蓋骨	435
Mao T'zu	毛刺	399	Nao Kao	腦膏	411
Mao Yu	貓鼬	398	Ni	溺	417
Mei	眉	409	Ni Pai Hsi	溺白堊	418
Meng Ko	蒙哥	398	Ni Wan Chih	泥丸脂	411
Meng Kuei	蒙貴	402	Nieh T'ieh	嚙鐵	353
Meng Sung	蒙頌	400,402	Niu	牛	326
Mi	麋	364,365	Niu Chüan Ts'ao	牛嚼草	326
Mi Chu	米豬	322	Niu Huang	牛黃	337
Mi Hou	獼猴	400	Niu Nai Ping	牛奶餅	334
Mi Hsiang	彌香	322	Niu Nai Su	牛奶酥	334
Mi Hsin	米心	369	Niu Pien	牛鞭	326
Mi Li Chia Lo	密利迦羅	364	Niu P'i Chiao	牛皮膠	336
Mien Yang	綿羊	324	Niu Tung	牛洞	326
Ming Shih	明脉	381	Niu Wei Li	牛尾狸	372
Ming T'i	命蒂	438	Nu Chiao	奴角	355
Ming T'o	明駝	330	O:		
Ming Yüeh Sha	明月砂	381	O	龜	322
Mo	獾	352,353	P:		
Mo	貓	375	Pa	耙	322
Mo K'o Chia P'o	莫訶伽婆	369	Pa Niu	擺牛	326
Mo Ssu Ch'a	摩斯咤	400	Pai Chiao	白膠	364
Mu Hou	沐猴	400	Pai Chu	白珠	324
Mu Kou	木狗	378	Pai Chu Sha	白硃砂	422
Mu K'e	木客	404	Pai Ku P'i	敗鼓皮	344
Mu Nai Yi	木乃伊	442	Pai Lung Sha	白龍沙	323

P:			P':		
Pai Pao	白豹	353	P'i Hsi	膽析	324
Pai Pi	敗筆	382	P'i Li	貌狸	395
Pai Shu	白鼠	395	P'i Shih	癖石	421
Pan Hsi	斑犀	355	P'iao Shu	驄鼠	399
Pan Lung	斑龍	364	P'ien	騙	327
Pao	豹	352	P'ien Niu	騙牛	357
Pao Yi	胞衣	436	P'ing Hou	平猴	373
Pao Yi Shui	胞衣水	437	P'ing Shu	甦鼠	388
Pei	狽	380	P'o Erh	頗兒	324
Pei T'i	髮髻	408	P'o So	婆婆	337
Pi Chien Shou	比肩獸	388	P'u Lu	稽魯	345
Pi Nien	避年	423	P'u P'o	魑魍	393
Pi Tu Shu	辟毒鼠	393	S:		
Piao	彪	351	San Huang	散黃	337
Pin	鬚	409	Sha Hsi	沙犀	355
Pin	獺	385	Shan Chih Shu	山枳鼠	399
Pin T'a	獺獺	384	Shan Chu	山豬	360
Ping Shu	冰鼠	388	Shan Hsi	山犀	355
Po	駁	351	Shan Hsiao	山魃	404
Po	魑	388	Shan Hsiao	山獾	404
Po Ch'ih Shuang	百齒霜	410	Shan Hui	山獾	404
Po Ts'ao Tan	百草丹	338	Shan Lü	山驢	328, 362
Po Tu	伯都	351	Shan Niu	山牛	356
Po Yeh	百葉	326	Shan Tu	山都	404
P':			Shan T'a	山獺	383
P'ang	龐	323	Shan Yang	山羊	324, 362, 363
P'eng Hou	彭侯	323	Shao Lao	少牢	326
P'eng Hou	彭侯	406	She	羆	322
P'i	熊	361	She	駘	327

S:			S:		
She	麝	369	Shui Niu	水牛	326
She Chia	舍迦	381	Shui She	水麝	369
She Fu	射父	369	Shui Shu	水鼠	388
Shen Hou	神猴	402	Shui T'a	水獺	384
Shen Li	神狸	370	Shui Wu Lung	水烏龍	386
Shen Shui	神水	426	Shuo Shu (Shih Shu)	碩鼠	391
Sheng Chi	聖蟄	326	Sou	搜	417
Sheng Hsiang	生香	369	Ssu	虺	351
Sheng Huang	生黃	337	Ssu	兕	355
Sheng Jen Hsiieh	生人血	422	Ssu	鼯	388
Sheng Shu	鼯鼠	396	Ssu Yen Chang	四眼鱧	366
Sheng T'ai	盛胎	423	Su	酥	332
Shih	豕	322	Su Lao	酥酪	332
Shih	獅	350	Suan Yi	狻猊	350
Shih	鼯	388	Sung Kou	松狗	394
Shih Lin	石麻	420	Sung Shu	松鼠	391
Shih She Shu	食蛇鼠	398	T:		
Shih Shu	鼯鼠	391	Ta Ching Ling Yang	大頸羚羊	325
Shih T'zu Sun	失刺孫	352	Ta Ch'ung	大蟲	351
Shou Shu	首鼠	388	Ta Pien	大便	415
Shu	鼠	388	Ta T'su Pu Hua	荅刺不花	393
Shu Mu	鼠母	390	Ta Wei Yang	大尾羊	324
Shu Wang	鼠王	390	Tao Chih	道脂	365
Shu Yin	鼠印	388	Ti	羝	324
Shuang T'ou Lu	雙頭鹿	366	Ti (Ch'ou)	獬	400
Shui Chiao	水膠	336	Ti Hou	地猴	396
Shui Hsi	水犀	355	Ti Kou	地狗	396
Shui Hsi chüeh	水犀角	355	Ti Lao Shu	地老鼠	389
Shui Kou	水狗	384	Ti Sheng Yang	地生羊	324

T:			T':		
Ti Shu	地鼠	388	T'ien K'uei	天癸	423
Ti Yang	地羊	323	T'ien Ling Kai	天靈蓋	435
Ti Yeh Chia	底野迦	340	T'ien Shu	田鼠	389
Tiao Shu	貂鼠	394	T'ing	鯢	388
Tse Chung	騎驢	329	T'o	駝	330
Tso Niu	牝牛	356	T'o	鼈	393
Tsou Yü	騶虞	351	T'o Mo	駝駟	329
Tsung	綜	322	T'o Po	鼈鼈	393
Tsung	縱	322	T'o T'o	橐駝	330
Tsung	鬚	408	T'o Yang	駝羊	324
Tu	獨	401	T'ou Fa	頭髮	408
Tu Chiao Hsi	獨角犀	355	T'ou Kou	頭垢	410
Tung	洞	327	T'ou Lu Kai	頭顱蓋	435
Tzu Ho Ch'e	紫河車	436	Ts'ai Mao Chi (T'u Mu Chi)	茶苜機	366
Tzu Po	茲白	351	Ts'an Hu	獬豸	402
Tzu Yang	紫羊	324	Ts'an Hu	獬湖	402
T':			Ts'ao	草	327
T'a Tzu Huang	塔子黃	337	Ts'ao T'ou Jou	槽頭肉	322
T'ai Lao	太牢	326	T'u	兔	381
T'ai Yi	胎衣	436	T'u Chang	土麤	369
T'an	毯	345	T'u Hsin	兔葦	381
T'ang Niu	犴牛	356	T'u Lou	土螻	404
T'ao	桃	327	T'u Niu Huang	土牛黃	337
T'ao T'u	駒駱	358	T'u Po Shu	土撥鼠	393
T'i Hu	醍醐	333	T'u Shu	鼈鼠	388
T'iao T'u	跳兔	388	T'uan	獮	376
T'iao Yang	洮羊	324,325	T'un	豚	322
T'ien Huan	天獾	377	T'un Tien	豚顛	322
T'ien Kou	天狗	377			

T:			Y:		
T'ung	潼	331	Yang Pien	羊鞭	324
T'ung Ku	胴骨	324	Yang P'i Ch'ih	羊臄脰	324
T'ung T'ien Hsi	通天犀	355	Yao	麩	365
T'zu	髭	409	Yao T'un	么豚	322
T'zu Hsi	髭鬚	432	Yeh	隸	372
T'zu Wei	刺蝟	399	Yeh Chu	野豬	359
W:			Yeh Hsi	耶希	366
Wai Shen	外腎	324	Yeh Jen	野人	404
Wan	婉	381	Yeh Ma	野馬	358
Wan Chu	羶豬	360	Yeh Mao	野貓	372
Wan Niu	紈牛	326	Yeh Nü	野女	403
Wang Liang	罔兩	405	Yeh P'o	野婆	403
Wang Sun	王孫	400	Yeh Yang	野羊	363
Wei	狴	399	Yeh Yen	夜眼	327
Wei	暈	399	Yen Lei	眼淚	429
Wei Hou	爲猴	400	Yen Niu	偃牛	390
Wei Niu	犂牛	356	Yen Shu	鼯鼠	389
Wei Shu	蝟鼠	399	Yen Shu	鼯鼠	390
Wen	駝	388	Yi	腴	322
Wu Chan	烏甌	345	Yi	猗	323
Wu Na Shou	膾膈獸	386	Yi Feng T'o	一封駝	330
Wu T'u	烏虺	351	Yin Chi	銀麕	367
Wu Yang	吳羊	324	Yin Ching	陰莖	439
Wu Yuan	烏圓	371	Yin Ch'ien Tsang	陰乾藏	322
Y:			Yin Mao	陰毛	433
Ya	牙	322	Yin Shu	隱鼠	389, 390
Ya Ch'ih	牙齒	414	Yin Shu	銀鼠	395
Yang	羊	324	Yin Tiao	銀貂	394
			Ying Ch'i	營氣	424

Y:

Yu	麀	364
Yu	狢	400,402
Yu Shu	鼬鼠	396
Yü	麁	351
Yü	羴	362
Yü	馮	400,402
Yü Chiao	魚膠	336
Yü I	余義	366
Yü Mien Li	玉面狸	372

Y:

Yüan	獫狁	401
Yüan Huang	圓黃	337
Yüan Yang	羴羊	363
Yüan Yü	羴羴	360
Yüeh Chih Niu	月支牛	356
Yüeh Ching	月經	423
Yüeh Ching Yi	月經衣	423
Yüeh Hsin	月信	423
Yün	驛	362